

## Table of Contents

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>Instrument Cluster</b>	<b>12</b>
Warning lights and chimes	12
Gauges	16
Message center	18
<b>Entertainment Systems</b>	<b>26</b>
AM/FM stereo cassette with CD	26
AM/FM stereo with in-dash six CD	31
<b>Climate Controls</b>	<b>38</b>
Dual automatic temperature control	38
Rear window defroster	41
<b>Lights</b>	<b>42</b>
Headlamps	42
Turn signal control	46
Bulb replacement	46
<b>Driver Controls</b>	<b>53</b>
Windshield wiper/washer control	53
Steering wheel adjustment	54
Power windows	57
Mirrors	58
Speed control	60
<b>Locks and Security</b>	<b>77</b>
Locks	77
Anti-theft system	89
<b>Seating and Safety Restraints</b>	<b>95</b>
Seating	95
Safety restraints	103
Airbags	116
Child restraints	129

## Table of Contents

<b>Tires, Wheels and Loading</b>	<b>148</b>
Tire information	148
Tire inflation	150
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	163
Vehicle loading	168
Trailer towing	175
Recreational towing	178
<b>Driving</b>	<b>179</b>
Starting	179
Brakes	184
Traction Control™	186
Air suspension	188
Transmission operation	190
Reverse sensing system	193
<b>Roadside Emergencies</b>	<b>197</b>
Getting roadside assistance	197
Hazard flasher control	198
Fuel pump shut-off switch	199
Fuses and relays	199
Changing tires	206
Wheel lug nut torque	214
Jump starting	215
Wrecker towing	220
<b>Customer Assistance</b>	<b>222</b>
Reporting safety defects (U.S. only)	228
Reporting safety defects (Canada only)	228
<b>Cleaning</b>	<b>229</b>

## Table of Contents

<b>Maintenance and Specifications</b>	<b>236</b>
Engine compartment	238
Engine oil	240
Battery	243
Engine coolant	245
Fuel information	251
Air filter(s)	267
Maintenance product specifications and capacities	269
Engine data	272
<b>Accessories</b>	<b>275</b>
<b>Ford Extended Service Plan</b>	<b>277</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>280</b>

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Ford Motor Company. Ford may change the contents without notice and without incurring obligation.

Copyright © 2009 Ford Motor Company

## Introduction

### CONGRATULATIONS

Congratulations on acquiring your new Lincoln. Please take the time to get well acquainted with your vehicle by reading this handbook. The more you know and understand about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will derive from driving it.

For more information on Ford Motor Company and its products visit the following website:

- In the United States: [www.ford.com](http://www.ford.com)
- In Canada: [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)
- In Mexico: [www.ford.com.mx](http://www.ford.com.mx)
- In Australia: [www.ford.com.au](http://www.ford.com.au)

Additional owner information is given in separate publications.

This Owner's Guide describes every option and model variant available and therefore some of the items covered may not apply to your particular vehicle. Furthermore, due to printing cycles it may describe options before they are generally available.

Remember to pass on the Owner's Guide when reselling the vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.



**WARNING: Fuel pump shut-off switch:** In the event of an accident the safety switch will automatically cut off the fuel supply to the engine. The switch can also be activated through sudden vibration (e.g. collision when parking). To reset the switch, refer to the *Fuel pump shut-off switch* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

### SAFETY AND ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION



#### Warning symbols in this guide

How can you reduce the risk of personal injury to yourself or others? In this guide, answers to such questions are contained in comments highlighted by the warning triangle symbol. These comments should be read and observed.

## Introduction

### **Warning symbols on your vehicle**

When you see this symbol, it is imperative that you consult the relevant section of this guide before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.




### **Protecting the environment**

We must all play our part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps towards this aim. Information in this respect is highlighted in this guide with the tree symbol.



### **CALIFORNIA Proposition 65 Warning**

 **WARNING:** Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

### **PERCHLORATE MATERIAL**

Certain components of this vehicle such as airbag modules, seat belt pretensioners, and button cell batteries may contain Perchlorate Material – Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).

## Introduction

### BREAKING-IN YOUR VEHICLE

Your vehicle does not need an extensive break-in. Try not to drive continuously at the same speed for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of new vehicle operation. Vary your speed frequently in order to give the moving parts a chance to break in.

Drive your new vehicle at least 1,000 miles (1,600 km) before towing a trailer. For more detailed information about towing a trailer, refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

Do not add friction modifier compounds or special break-in oils since these additives may prevent piston ring seating. See *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information on oil usage.

### SPECIAL NOTICES

#### New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* that is provided to you along with your Owner's Guide.

#### Special instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.



**WARNING:** Please read the section *Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

### DATA RECORDING

#### Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use the SYNC® Vehicle Health Report, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used for any purpose. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.

#### Event Data Recording

**Other modules in your vehicle — event data recorders — are capable of collecting and storing data during a crash or near crash event. The recorded information may assist in the investigation of such an event. The modules may record information about both the vehicle and the occupants, potentially including information such as:**

- **how various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled;**
- **how far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal;**
- **how fast the vehicle was traveling;**
- **where the driver was positioning the steering wheel; and**
- **longitude and latitude of vehicle at last location, using GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors.**

## Introduction

To access this information, special equipment must be directly connected to the recording modules. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. To the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recording applies to SYNC® or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators the vehicle location, and/or other details about the vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the feature. See your SYNC® supplement for more information. Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only), the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information") only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches you request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. Ford Motor Company and the vendors it uses to provide you with this information do not store your vehicle travel information. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.

### CELL PHONE USE

The use of Mobile Communications Equipment has become increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, drivers must not compromise their own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile Communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits.

Mobile Communication Equipment includes, but is not limited to cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, in-vehicle communications systems, telematics devices and portable two-way radios.

8



## Introduction



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.



### **EXPORT UNIQUE (NON-UNITED STATES/CANADA) VEHICLE SPECIFIC INFORMATION**

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Guide. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Guide is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for Export. **Refer to this Owner's Guide for all other required information and warnings.**

## Introduction













These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

### Vehicle Symbol Glossary

Safety Alert		See Owner's Guide	
Fasten Safety Belt		Airbag - Front	
Airbag - Side		Child Seat Lower Anchor	
Child Seat Tether Anchor		Brake System	
Anti-Lock Brake System		Parking Brake System	
Brake Fluid - Non-Petroleum Based		Parking Aid System	
Stability Control System		Speed Control	
Master Lighting Switch		Hazard Warning Flasher	
Fog Lamps-Front		Fuse Compartment	
Fuel Pump Reset		Windshield Wash/Wipe	
Windshield Defrost/Demist		Rear Window Defrost/Demist	

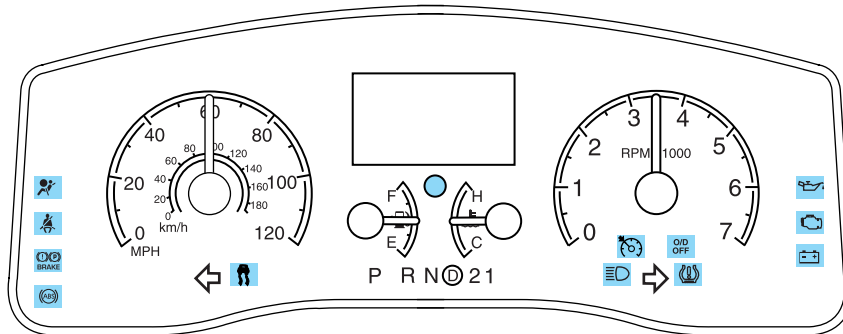
## Introduction

### Vehicle Symbol Glossary

Power Windows Front/Rear		Power Window Lockout	
Child Safety Door Lock/Unlock		Interior Luggage Compartment Release	
Panic Alarm		Engine Oil	
Engine Coolant		Engine Coolant Temperature	
Do Not Open When Hot		Battery	
Avoid Smoking, Flames, or Sparks		Battery Acid	
Explosive Gas		Fan Warning	
Power Steering Fluid		Maintain Correct Fluid Level	
Service Engine Soon		Engine Air Filter	
Passenger Compartment Air Filter		Jack	
Check Fuel Cap		Low Tire Pressure Warning	

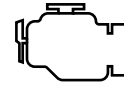
## Instrument Cluster

### WARNING LIGHTS AND CHIMES



Warning lights and gauges can alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious enough to cause expensive repairs. A warning light may illuminate when a problem exists with one of your vehicle's functions. Many lights will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure the bulb works. If any light remains on after starting the vehicle, refer to the respective system warning light for additional information.

**Service engine soon:** The *Service engine soon* indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned to the on position to check



the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing. Normally, the "Service engine soon" light will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the "Service engine soon" light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. See the *Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Solid illumination after the engine is started indicates the On Board Diagnostics System (OBD-II) has detected a malfunction. Refer to *On board diagnostics (OBD-II)* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

## Instrument Cluster



**WARNING:** Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire.

**Brake system warning light:** To confirm the brake system warning light is functional, it will momentarily illuminate when the ignition is turned to the on position



when the engine is not running, or in a position between on and start, or by applying the parking brake when the ignition is turned to the on position. If the brake system warning light does not illuminate at this time, seek service immediately from your authorized dealer. Illumination after releasing the parking brake indicates low brake fluid level and the brake system should be inspected immediately by your authorized dealer.



**WARNING:** Driving a vehicle with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop the vehicle. Have the vehicle checked by your authorized dealer. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

**Anti-lock brake system:** If the ABS light stays illuminated or continues to flash, a malfunction has been detected, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. Normal braking is still functional unless the brake warning light also is illuminated.



**Airbag readiness:** If this light fails to illuminate when the ignition is turned to no, continues to flash or remains on, have the system



serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. A chime will sound when there is a malfunction in the indicator light.

## Instrument Cluster

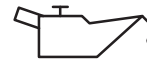
**Safety belt:** Reminds you to fasten your safety belt. A Belt-Minder® chime will also sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. Refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter to activate/deactivate the Belt-Minder® chime feature.



**Charging system:** Illuminates when the battery is not charging properly. If it stays on while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction with the charging system. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. This indicates a problem with the electrical system or a related component.



**Engine oil pressure:** Illuminates when the oil pressure falls below the normal range, refer to *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



**Traction Control (if equipped):** Flashes when the traction control system is active. It will be illuminated solidly if there is a fault with the system and traction control will be disabled. Have the system serviced immediately. Refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.



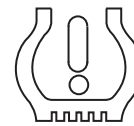
**Severity indicator:** Displays the indicated severity color when any of the following warning conditions has occurred:



- Red: Low Oil Pressure, Charge System, Engine Coolant Over Temperature, Door Ajar
- Amber: Low Fuel

Refer to *Message center* in this chapter.

**Low tire pressure warning (if equipped):** Illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the light remains on at start up or while driving, the tire pressure should be checked. Refer to *Inflating your tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and*



14

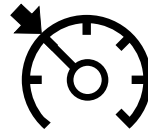
## Instrument Cluster

*Loading* chapter. When the ignition is first turned to on, the light will illuminate for three seconds to ensure the bulb is working. If the light does not turn on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer. For more information on this system, refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

**O/D off:** Illuminates when the overdrive function of the transmission has been turned off; refer to the *Driving* chapter. If the light does not illuminate, have the transmission serviced soon, or damage may occur.



**Speed control:** Illuminates when the speed control is activated. Turns off when the speed control system is deactivated.



**Turn signal:** Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard lights are turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb.



**High beams:** Illuminates when the high beam headlamps are turned on.



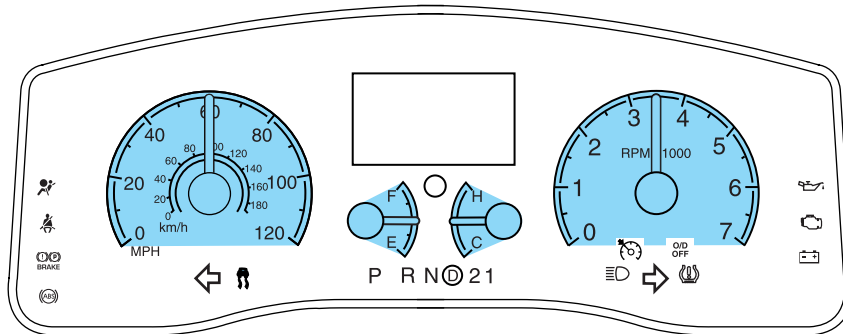
**Headlamps on warning chime:** Sounds when the headlamps or parking lamps are on, the ignition is off (the key is not in the ignition) and the driver's door is opened.

**Key-in-ignition warning chime:** Sounds when the key is left in the ignition in the off or accessory position and the driver's door is opened.

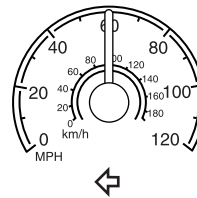
**Turn signal chime (if equipped):** Sounds when the turn signal lever has been activated to signal a turn and not turned off after the vehicle is driven more than 1/2 mile (0.8 km).

## Instrument Cluster

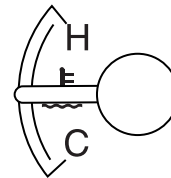
### GAUGES



**Speedometer:** Indicates the current vehicle speed. Refer to the *Message center* in this chapter to change your display to a digital speedometer. The digital display is more accurate than the analog gauge and may not match.



**Engine coolant temperature gauge:** Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the needle will be in the normal range (between “H” and “C”). **If it enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool,** refer to *What you should know about fail-safe cooling* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



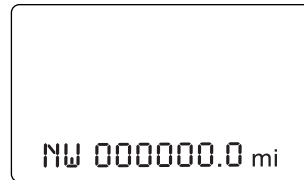
**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.



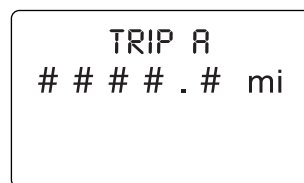
## Instrument Cluster

**Odometer:** Registers the total miles (kilometers) of the vehicle.

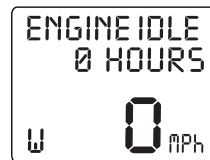
Refer to *Message center* in this chapter on how to switch the display from Metric to English and the odometer to the speedometer.



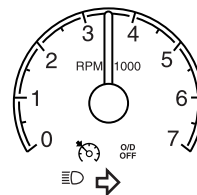
**Trip odometer:** See *TRIP A/B* under *Message center* in this chapter.



**Hour meter (if equipped):** Your vehicle may be equipped with an hour meter to indicate how much time the vehicle is idling in Park or Neutral. The meter is incorporated with the vehicle odometer. Press and release the message center INFO button until "ENGINE IDLE 0 HOURS" appears in the display. Press the RESET button to reset. For every hour that the vehicle idles, it has accumulated the equivalent of approximately 33 miles (53 km) of driving. Using the combination of the vehicle odometer and hour meter allows the fleet manager to better determine when the oil needs to be changed.

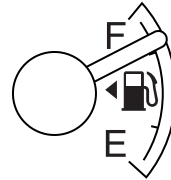


**Tachometer:** Indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute. Driving with your tachometer pointer continuously at the top of the scale may damage the engine.



## Instrument Cluster

**Fuel gauge:** Indicates approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank (when the ignition is in the on position). The fuel gauge may vary slightly when the vehicle is in motion or on a grade.

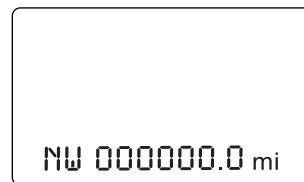


The arrow near the fuel pump icon indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

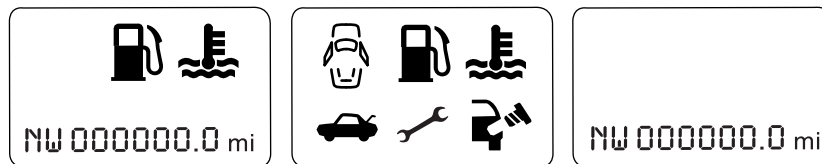
Refer to *Filling the tank* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

### MESSAGE CENTER

With the ignition in the on position, the message center, located on your instrument cluster, displays important vehicle information **through a constant monitor of vehicle systems.** You may select display features on the message center for a display of status. The



system will also notify you of potential vehicle problems with a display of system warnings followed by a long indicator chime.



Your display can show up to three reconfigurable telltales at one time. What ever is displayed in the top left corner has the highest priority. Premium Display Severity Indicator (located under the message center): Indicates severity of the information being displayed on the premium display. Red for high severity, amber for medium severity, and non-lit for information only. For example, a door ajar warning would be accompanied by a red indicator, low fuel by an amber indicator, and fuel economy by an absence of the indicator. The indicator always illuminates with the highest severity rating of the warnings displayed.

18

## Instrument Cluster

### Info (Information menu)

Press the INFO button repeatedly to cycle through the following features listed:



Press the RESET button reset functions in the information menu.

### TRIP A/B

Registers the distance of individual journeys. Press and release INFO button until the A or B trip appears in the display (this represents the trip mode). Press and hold the RESET button for two seconds to reset.

Refer to *UNITS* later in this section to switch the display from Metric to English.

### MILES (km) TO EMPTY

This displays an estimate of approximately how far you can drive with the fuel remaining in your tank under normal driving conditions. Remember to turn the ignition off when refueling to allow this feature to correctly detect the added fuel.

The DTE function will display FUEL LEVEL LOW and sound a tone for one second when you have approximately 50 miles (80 km) to empty. If you RESET this warning message, this display and tone will return within 10 minutes or 10 miles (16 km).

DTE is calculated using a running average fuel economy, which is based on your recent driving history of 500 miles (800 km). This value is not the same as the average fuel economy display. The running average fuel economy is reinitialized to a factory default value if the battery is disconnected.

### AVERAGE FUEL XX.X MPG (L/100km)

Average fuel economy displays your average fuel economy in miles/gallon or liters/100 km.

If you calculate your average fuel economy by dividing gallons of fuel used by 100 miles traveled (kilometers traveled by liters used), your figure may be different than displayed for the following reasons:

- Your vehicle was not perfectly level during fill-up

## Instrument Cluster

- Differences in the automatic shut-off points on the fuel pumps at service stations
- Variations in top-off procedure from one fill-up to another
- Rounding of the displayed values to the nearest 0.1 gallon (liter)

1. Drive the vehicle at least 5 miles (8 km) with the speed control system engaged to display a stabilized average.
2. Record the highway fuel economy for future reference.

It is important to press the RESET control (press and hold RESET for two seconds in order to reset the function) after setting the speed control to get accurate highway fuel economy readings.

### **FUEL ECONOMY MPG (L/km) ↑ ↓**

This displays instantaneous fuel economy as a bar graph ranging from ↓ poor economy to ↑ excellent economy.

Your vehicle must be moving to calculate instantaneous fuel economy. When your vehicle is not moving, this function shows ↓, one or no bars illuminated. Instantaneous fuel economy cannot be reset.

### **TIMER**

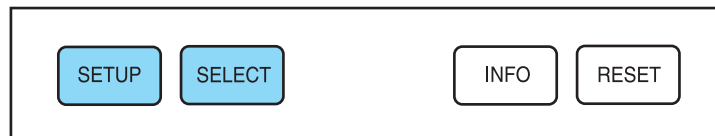
Timer displays the trip elapsed drive time.

To operate, do the following:

1. Press and release RESET in order to start the timer.
2. Press and release RESET to pause the timer.
3. Press and hold RESET until the timer resets.

### **System Check and Vehicle Feature Customization**

Press the SETUP button repeatedly to cycle the message center through the following features listed:



Press SELECT to select functions in the setup menu:

### **PRESS SELECT TO BEGIN SYSTEM CHECK**

When this message appears, press SELECT and the message center will begin to cycle through the following systems and provide a status of the item if needed.

20

## Instrument Cluster

**Note:** Some systems show a message only if a condition is present.

1. OIL LIFE  
— HOLD RESET IF NEW OIL
2. WASHER FLUID
3. AIR SUSPENSION (if equipped)
4. RECONFIGURABLE TELLTALES  
— OK  
— FAILED RED  
— FAILED AMBER
5. PARK AID (if equipped)

### **SCREEN FORM**

Press SELECT to change the display:

- ODOMETER
- SPEEDO

### **TEXT SIZE**

Press SELECT to change the display text size:

- NORMAL
- LARGE

### **UNITS**

Displays the current units English or Metric.

Press SELECT to change the display units.

- ENGLISH
- METRIC

### **LANGUAGE**

Displays the current language selected.

Press SELECT to change the display language.

- ENGLISH
- ESPANOL
- FRANCAIS

### **COMPASS**

The compass reading may be affected when you drive near large buildings, bridges, power lines and powerful broadcast antenna. Magnetic or metallic objects placed in, on or near the vehicle may also affect compass accuracy.

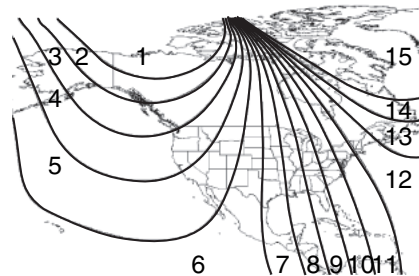
## Instrument Cluster

Usually, when something affects the compass readings, the compass will correct itself after a few days of operating your vehicle in normal conditions. If the compass still appears to be inaccurate, a manual calibration may be necessary. Refer to *Compass zone/calibration adjustment*.

Most geographic areas (zones) have a magnetic north compass point that varies slightly from the northerly direction on maps. This variation is four degrees between adjacent zones and will become noticeable as the vehicle crosses multiple zones. A correct zone setting will eliminate this error. Refer to *Compass zone/calibration adjustment*.

### **Compass zone/calibration adjustment**

1. Determine your magnetic zone by referring to the zone map.
2. Turn ignition to the on position.
3. Start the engine.
4. Press SETUP to reach the Compass/Odometer function.
5. Press SELECT to show COMPASS ZONE <XX> PRESS SELECT TO CHANGE.



6. Press the SELECT control repeatedly until the correct zone setting for your geographic location is displayed on the message center. The range of zone values are from 01 to 15 and “wraps” back to 01.
7. To exit the zone setting mode, and to “lock in” your change, press and release the SETUP control.

Perform compass calibration in an open area free from steel structures and high voltage lines. For optimum calibration, turn off all electrical accessories (heater/air conditioning, wipers, etc.) and make sure all vehicle doors are shut.

8. Press the SELECT control to start the compass calibration function.
9. Slowly drive the vehicle in a circle (less than 3 mph [5 km/h]) until the CIRCLE SLOWLY TO CALIBRATE COMPASS display changes to COMPASS CALIBRATION COMPLETED. It will take up to five circles to complete calibration.

## Instrument Cluster

10. The compass is now calibrated.

### **OIL LIFE START VALUE PRESS SELECT TO CHANGE**

Press SELECT to change the oil life start value. OIL LIFE START VALUE SET TO XXX% will be displayed.

To reset the oil monitoring system to 100% after each oil change (approximately 7,500 miles [12,000 km] or six months), perform the following:

1. Press and hold the RESET control for two seconds and release. Oil life is set to 100% and “OIL LIFE XXX% HOLD RESET IF NEW OIL” is displayed.
2. Press and hold the RESET control for three seconds and release. Oil life is set to 100% and “OIL LIFE START VALUE SET TO XXX%” is displayed.

### **PARK AID (Reverse sensing system—if equipped)**

This feature sounds a warning tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper, and functions only when R (Reverse) gear is selected.

1. Before you disable/enable the reverse sensing system feature, put the vehicle in R (Reverse).
2. Press RESET to turn the park aid ON or OFF.

### **System warnings**

System warnings alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle's operating systems.

In the event of a multiple warning situation, the message center will cycle the display to show all warnings by displaying each one for four seconds.

The message center will display the last selected feature if there are no more warning messages. This allows you to use the full functionality of the message center after you acknowledge the warning by pressing the RESET control and clearing the warning message.

Warning messages that have been reset are divided into three categories:

- They cannot be reset until the condition is corrected.
- They will reappear on the display 10 minutes from the reset.
- They will not reappear until an ignition off-on cycle has been completed.

This acts as a reminder that these warning conditions still exist within the vehicle.

## Instrument Cluster

**DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when a door is not completely closed.

**POWERTRAIN MALFUNCTION** — Displayed when the powertrain is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**COOLANT OVER TEMPERATURE** — Displayed when the engine coolant is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, turn off the engine and let it cool. Check the coolant and coolant level. Refer to *Engine coolant* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

**CHECK FUEL CAP** — Displayed when the fuel filler cap is not properly installed. Check the fuel filler cap for proper installation. Refer to *Fuel filler cap* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**CHECK AIR SUSPENSION** — Displayed when the air suspension system is not operating properly. If this message is displayed while driving, pull off the road as soon as safely possible. For more information, refer to *Air suspension system* in the *Driving* chapter.

**FUEL LEVEL LOW** — Displayed as an early reminder of a low fuel condition. Warning message can be reset by pressing the RESET button, but will return after 10 minutes. If any other button is pressed besides RESET, the message "PRESS RESET TO CLEAR" will appear in the message center. Once this message disappears (after approximately two seconds), press RESET to clear the warning.

**TRUNK AJAR** — Displayed when the trunk is not completely closed.

**OVERDRIVE OFF** — Displayed when the overdrive is disabled.

**OVERDRIVE ON** — Displayed when the overdrive is enabled.

**LOW TIRE PRESSURE** — Displayed when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. Refer to *Inflating your tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

**TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR FAULT** — Displayed when the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



## Instrument Cluster

**TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR FAULT** — Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use (Note: this includes the use of the optional full-sized matching spare tire and wheel). For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**CHECK COMPASS MOD** — Displayed when the compass is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**WASHER FLUID LEVEL LOW** — Indicates the washer fluid reservoir is less than one quarter full. Check the washer fluid level. Refer to *Windshield washer fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**OIL LIFE CHANGE SOON** — Displayed when the engine oil life remaining is 10% or less.

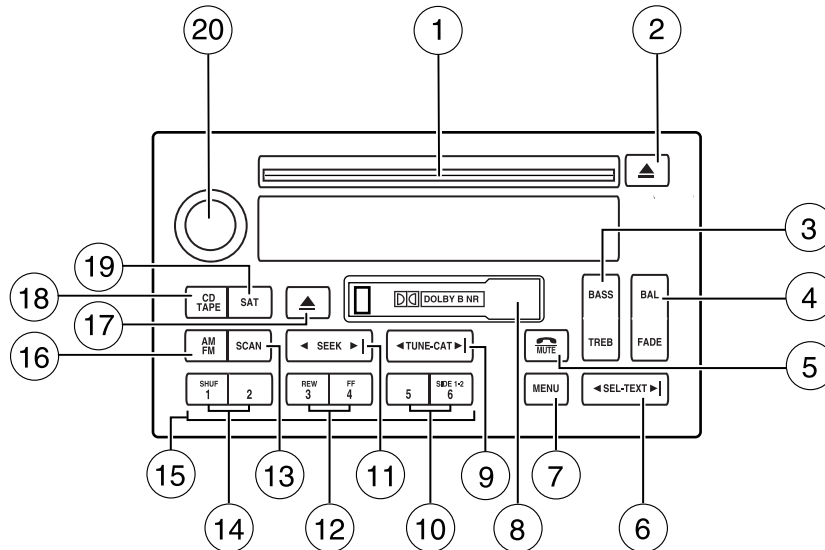
**OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** — Displayed when the oil life left reaches 0%.

An oil change is required whenever indicated by the message center and according to the recommended maintenance schedule. **USE ONLY RECOMMENDED ENGINE OILS.**

## Entertainment Systems

### AUDIO SYSTEMS

#### Premium AM/FM Stereo Single CD/Cassette system



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

**Accessory delay:** Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay. With this feature, the window switches, radio and moon roof (if equipped) may be used for up to ten minutes after the ignition is turned off or until any door is opened.

1. **CD slot:** Insert a CD, label side up. With the ignition on, the radio will begin to play a CD once inserted. If the ignition and audio system are off, press CD prior to inserting a disc. Do not force a disc into the system as damage could result.



26

## Entertainment Systems

2. **CD eject:** Press to eject a CD. If the disc is not removed within the allotted time, the system will automatically reload the CD and begin play. **Note:** The eject function will work when the ignition and audio systems are turned off.



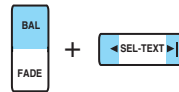
3. **BASS:** Press BASS; then press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to decrease/increase the level of bass output.



**TREB (Treble):** Press TREB; then press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to decrease/increase the level of treble output.



4. **BAL (Balance):** Press BAL; then press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to shift sound to the left/right speakers.



**FADE:** Press FADE; then press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to shift sound to the rear/front speakers.



5. **Phone/mute:** Press to mute the playing media. Press again to return to the playing media, or turn the volume control to adjust the volume.



6. **SEL/TEXT:** Use with Bass, Treble, Balance, Fade and other menu functions.



**TEXT:** TEXT is only available when equipped with Satellite radio. Your radio is equipped with Satellite ready capability. The kit to enable satellite reception is available through your authorized dealer. Detailed satellite instructions are included with the dealer installed kit. *Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

7. **MENU:** Press MENU repeatedly to access RBDS on/off. Use SEL to turn RBDS ON or OFF. Press MENU again to access Program type mode or Show Type/Name mode. (MENU must be pressed within 10 seconds to proceed to the next RBDS mode.)



## Entertainment Systems

The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) recommend that FM radio broadcasters use RBDS technology to transmit information. FM radio stations are independently operated and individually elect to use RBDS technology to transmit station ID and program type as desired.

**FIND Program type:** Allows you to search RBDS-equipped stations for a certain category of music format: Classic, Country, Info, Jazz, Oldies, R&B, Religious, Rock, Soft, Top 40.

With RBDS ON, press MENU until the program type menu is displayed. One of the various program types will appear. Press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to scroll through music types. Press SEEK or SCAN to search for a station playing the requested music category.

**Show TYPE:** Selects between displaying the station's call letters or music format when RBDS is enabled. Press MENU until SHOW XX appears in the display. Press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to select NAME or TYPE.

**Compression:** Brings soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level when in CD mode. Press MENU repeatedly until COMP (compression) is displayed. Press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to enable the compression feature when COMPRESS OFF is displayed. Press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ again to disable the feature when COMPRESS ON is displayed. When activated, the compression icon will appear in the display.

**Occupancy mode:** (if equipped): Press MENU repeatedly until occupancy mode appears in the display. Press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to select ALL, DRIVER or REAR SEAT occupancy mode.

**Autoset:** Allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2. Press MENU repeatedly until AUTOSET appears in the display. Press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to turn ON or OFF. When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets.

**Speed sensitive volume:** Radio volume changes automatically and slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Recommended level is 1–3. SPEED OFF turns the feature off and level 7 is the maximum setting.

Press MENU to access and ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to adjust the volume setting. The level will appear in the display.

28

## Entertainment Systems

**Dolby:** Works in tape mode to reduce tape noise and hiss. Press MENU until DOLBY XX appears in the display. Press SEL/TEXT to turn ON or OFF.

The Dolby® noise reduction system is manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. Dolby® and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

**Armrest (if equipped):** If your vehicle is equipped with Rear Seat Audio controls, this feature will be listed in Menu mode.

Press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to turn ON or OFF. When the feature is turned ON, rear seat passengers can adjust the settings of the front audio stem. For further information, refer to *Rear Console Audio Controls (if equipped)* later in this chapter.

**Note:** The menu selections will remain in the display for approximately 10 seconds, at which time the display will return to the previous mode. You may also exit the menu options by pressing any other audio control.

**Setting the clock:** Your vehicle is equipped with a separate in-dash clock. Refer to *Clock* in the *Driver Controls* chapter for instructions on how to set the time.

8. **Cassette:** Insert a cassette facing to the right.

9. **TUNE:** Press to manually go up or down the radio frequency.



**CAT:** CAT is only available when equipped with Satellite Radio. Your vehicle may be equipped with Satellite ready capability. The kit to enable Satellite reception is available through your authorized dealer. Detailed Satellite instructions are included with the dealer installed kit. *Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

10. **Side 1-2:** Press to access the next side of the cassette tape. The display will indicate whether TAPE 1 or TAPE 2 is playing.



11. **SEEK:** Press to access the next/previous radio station, tape selection or CD track. Press and hold to advance/reverse in the current CD track.



## Entertainment Systems

12. **REW (Rewind):** Press to rewind in tape or CD mode.



**FF (Fast forward):** Press to fast forward in tape or CD mode.



13. **SCAN:** Press SCAN to hear a brief sampling of radio stations, selections or CD tracks. Press again to stop.



14. **SHUF (Shuffle):** Press to play the tracks on the current CD in random order. Press again to stop.



15. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band, tune to a station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns.



16. **AM/FM:** Press to switch between AM/FM1/FM2 modes.



17. **Tape eject:** Press to eject the tape.



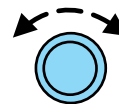
18. **CD/TAPE:** Press to switch between CD and TAPE mode. In radio mode, the CD icon will appear in the display if a CD is loaded into the system.



19. **SAT:** Your system may be equipped with Satellite Ready capability. The kit to enable the Satellite reception is available through your authorized dealer. Detailed satellite instructions are included with the dealer installed kit. *Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

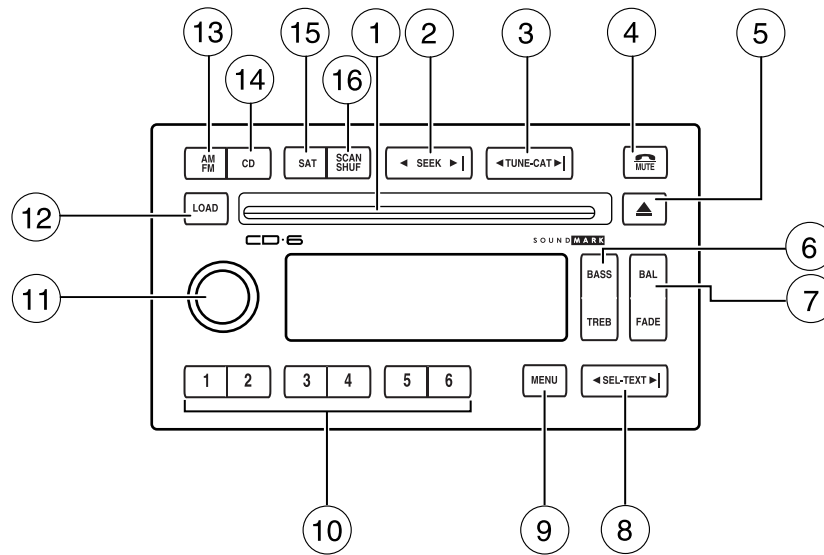


20. **On/Off/Volume:** Press to turn on and off; turn to adjust the volume levels.




## Entertainment Systems

### Premium plus AM/FM Stereo In-dash Six CD sound system



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

**Accessory delay:** Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay. With this feature, the window switches and radio may be used for up to ten minutes after the ignition is turned off or until any door is opened.

1. **CD slot:** To insert a CD, press . Wait to insert a CD until the system prompts you. With the ignition on, the radio will begin to play a CD once inserted. If the ignition and audio system are off, press CD prior to inserting a disc. Do not force a disc into the system as damage could result.

## Entertainment Systems

2. **SEEK:** Press to access the next/previous radio station or CD track. Press and hold to advance/reverse in the current CD track.



3. **TUNE/CAT:** Press to manually go up or down the radio frequency.



CAT is only available when equipped with Satellite radio. Your vehicle may be equipped with Satellite ready capability. The kit to enable Satellite reception is available through your authorized dealer. Detailed Satellite instructions are included with the dealer installed kit. *Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

4. **MUTE:** Press to mute the playing media. Press again to return to the playing media or turn the volume control to adjust the volume.



5. **Eject:** Press to eject CD(s) when the ignition is on or off. Numbers will illuminate in the display indicating which CD slots are loaded with CDs. To eject a specific CD, press eject and the corresponding preset number. If no preset is selected, the system will eject the currently selected CD. Press and hold to eject all loaded discs.



**Note:** If the CD is not removed within approximately 15 seconds, the system will reload the disc and begin play if the system is on.

6. **BASS:** Press BASS; then press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to decrease/increase the level of bass output.



**TREB (Treble):** Press TREB; then press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to decrease/increase the level of treble output.



7. **BAL (Balance):** Press BAL; then press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to shift sound to the left/right speakers.





## Entertainment Systems

**FADE:** Press FADE; then press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to shift sound to the rear/front speakers.



8. **SEL-TEXT:** Use with Bass, Treble, Balance, Fade and other menu functions.



**TEXT:** TEXT is only available when equipped with Satellite radio. Your vehicle may be equipped with Satellite ready capability. The kit to enable Satellite reception is available through your authorized dealer. Detailed Satellite instructions are included with the dealer installed kit. *Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

9. **MENU:** Press MENU repeatedly to access RBDS ON or OFF.



Use ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to turn RBDS ON or OFF. Press MENU again to access Program type mode or Show Type mode. (MENU must be pressed within 10 seconds to proceed to the next RBDS mode.)

The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) recommend that FM radio broadcasters use RBDS technology to transmit information. FM radio stations are independently operated and individually elect to use RBDS technology to transmit station ID and program type as desired.

**FIND Program type:** Allows you to search RBDS-equipped stations for a certain category of music format: Classic, Country, Info, Jazz, Oldies, R&B, Religious, Rock, Soft, Top 40.

In FM mode, with RBDS ON, press MENU until the program type menu is displayed. One of the various program types will appear.

Press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to scroll through music types. Press SEEK or SCAN to search for a station playing the requested music category.

**Show TYPE:** Selects between displaying the station's call letters or music format when RBDS is enabled. Press and hold MENU until SHOW XX appears in the display. Press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to select NAME or TYPE.

**Compression:** Brings soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level when in CD mode. Press MENU until compression status is displayed. Press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to enable the compression feature when COMPRESS OFF is displayed.

## Entertainment Systems

Press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ again to disable the feature when COMPRESS ON is displayed. When activated, the compression icon will illuminate in the display.

**Occupancy mode:** (Available on Premium plus audios): Press MENU until occupancy mode appears in the display. Press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to select ALL, DRIVER or REAR SEAT occupancy mode.

**Autoset:** Allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2. Press MENU until AUTOSET appears in the display. Press ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to turn ON or OFF. When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets. When activated, AUTOSET will appear in the display when any of the preset controls are pressed.

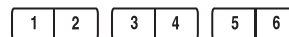
**Speed sensitive volume:** Radio volume changes automatically and slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Recommended level is 1–3. Level 0 turns the feature off and level 7 is the maximum setting.

Press MENU to access and use ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to adjust the volume setting. The level will appear in the display.

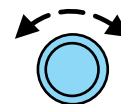
**Armrest ON/OFF:** Press MENU repeatedly until Armrest ON/OFF appears. Use ◀ SEL-TEXT ▶ to toggle the rear console audio controls ON or OFF (if equipped).

**Setting the clock:** Your vehicle is equipped with an in-dash clock. Refer to *Clock* in the *Driver Controls* chapter for instructions on how to set the time.

10. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band, tune to a station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns.



11. **On/Off/Volume:** Push to turn on/off; turn to adjust the volume levels.



**Note:** With the ignition and audio system off, you may press the volume control to momentarily view the clock.

34

## Entertainment Systems

12. **LOAD:** Press to load a CD.



When the system prompts you, select a preset to load a CD in that particular slot. Load the CD. If you do not pick a slot, the system will select the next available slot. Available slots are indicated by small flashing indicators in the display. Press and hold to autoload up to six discs.

**Note:** Ensure that the system is ready to accept the CD and do not try to force the disc into the CD slot as damage could result.

13. **AM/FM:** Press repeatedly to switch between AM/FM1/FM2 mode.



14. **CD:** Press to enter CD mode. Press CD and a preset to select a specific CD to play.



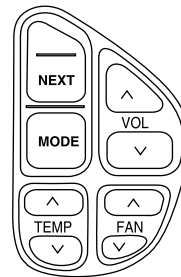
15. **SAT:** SAT is only available when equipped with Satellite radio. Your vehicle may be equipped with Satellite ready capability. The kit to enable Satellite reception is available through your authorized dealer. Detailed Satellite instructions are included with the dealer installed kit. *Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

16. **SHUF/SCAN:** Press SCAN to hear a brief sampling of radio stations or CD tracks. Press again to stop.

**SHUF (Shuffle):** Press and hold to play the CD tracks in random order for the CD currently being played. Press again to stop.

### Rear console audio controls (if equipped)

- **NEXT:** Press to access the next radio memory preset, the next CD track or the next tape selection.
- **VOL:** Press the up arrow to increase the volume or the down arrow to decrease the volume.
- **MODE:** Press to cycle through AM, FM1, FM2, TAPE or CD (if equipped) modes.



## Entertainment Systems

### GENERAL AUDIO INFORMATION

**Radio frequencies:** AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

AM - 530, 540–1700, 1710 kHz

FM- 87.7, 87.9–107.7, 107.9 MHz

**Radio reception factors:** There are three factors that can affect radio reception:

- Distance/strength: The further you travel from a station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, power lines, electric fences, traffic lights and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a broadcast tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and play while the weak station frequency is displayed.

### Cassette player care:

- Use only cassettes that are 90 minutes long or less.
- Tighten very loose tapes by inserting a finger or pencil into the hole and turning the hub.
- Remove loose labels before inserting tapes.
- Allow tapes which have been subjected to extreme heat, humidity or cold to reach a moderate temperature before playing.
- Clean the cassette player head with a cassette cleaning cartridge after 10–12 hours of play to maintain good sound/operation.

Don't:

- Expose tapes to direct sunlight, extreme humidity, heat or cold.
- Leave tapes in the cassette player for a long time when not being played.

## Entertainment Systems

### CD/CD player care:

Do:

- Handle discs by their edges only. Never touch the playing surface.
- Inspect discs before playing. Clean only with an approved CD cleaner and wipe from the center out.

Don't:

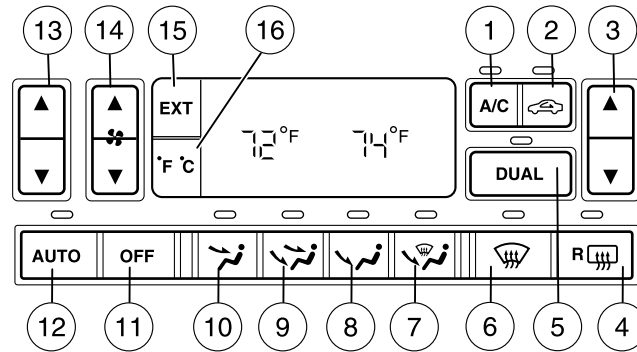
- Expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.
- Clean using a circular motion.

**CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players. Dirty, warped or damaged CDs, irregular shaped CDs, CDs with a scratch protection film attached, and CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player. The label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.**

**Audio system warranty and service:** Refer to the *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* for audio system warranty information. If service is necessary, see your dealer or qualified technician.

## Climate Controls

### DUAL ELECTRONIC AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL (DEATC) SYSTEM



1. **A/C control:** Cools the vehicle and is used to reduce humidity in the vehicle. Press to turn on/off.



The A/C control engages automatically in AUTO, and modes.

2. **Recirculation control:** Cools the vehicle more quickly by recirculating the cabin air instead of using outside air and helps prevent unpleasant outside odors or fumes from entering the vehicle. Press to turn on/off in all modes except . Recirculation may turn off automatically to reduce fogging potential.



3. **Passenger side temperature control:** Controls the temperature on the passenger side of the vehicle when in dual zone mode. To enter dual zone, press the passenger temperature control or DUAL. The passenger temperature will appear in the display.




4. **Rear defroster control:** Removes ice and fog from the rear window. Press to turn on/off. Refer to the rear window defrost section for more information.





## Climate Controls


5. **DUAL** (Single/dual temperature control): Allows the driver to have full control of the cabin temperature settings (single zone) or allows the passenger to have control of their individual temperature settings (dual zone). Press to turn on dual zone mode, press again to return to single zone.



6.  : Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and the side window demisters.

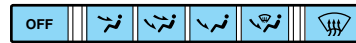
7.  : Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents, the side window demisters and floor vents.

8.  : Distributes air through the floor vents.

9.  : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents and the floor vents.

10.  : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.

**Manual override controls:** Allows you to manually determine where airflow is directed. To return to fully automatic control, press AUTO.



11. **OFF:** Outside air is shut out and the fan will not operate.



12. **AUTO:** Press and select the desired temperature. The system will automatically determine the fan speed, airflow location, A/C on or off, outside or recirculated air to heat or cool the vehicle to the selected temperature. If unusual conditions exist, (i.e., window fogging, etc.), manual overrides allow you to select airflow locations and fan speed.



13. **Driver's side temperature control:** Controls the temperature on the driver side of the vehicle.



14. **Fan Speed:** Used to manually enable or disable the fan speed. To return to automatic fan operation, press AUTO.



## Climate Controls


15. **EXT:** Displays the outside air temperature. It will remain displayed until the EXT control is pressed again. The external temperature will be most accurate when the vehicle has been moving for a period of time.



16. **Temperature conversion:** Press to switch between Fahrenheit and Celsius temperature on the DEATC display only. The set point temperatures in Celsius will be displayed in half-degree increments.




### Operating tips

- To reduce fog build up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the  position.
- To reduce humidity build up inside the vehicle: do not drive with the recirculation control on or the system turned off.
- To improve the A/C cool down, drive with the windows slightly open for 2–3 minutes after start up or until the vehicle has been “aired out.”
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the back seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

During extreme high ambient temperatures when idling stationary for extended periods of time in gear, it is recommended to run the A/C in the MAX A/C position, reduce blower fan speed from the highest setting and put the vehicle's transmission into the PARK gear position to continue to receive cool air from your A/C system.

To aid in side window defogging/demisting in cold weather:

1. Select .
2. Select A/C.
3. Adjust the temperature control to maintain comfort.
4. Set the fan to the highest speed.
5. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows.

To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.

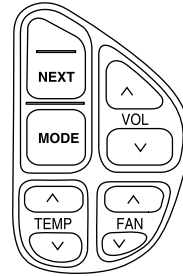
40



## Climate Controls

### REAR CONSOLE CLIMATE CONTROLS (IF EQUIPPED)

- **TEMP:** Press to increase or decrease airflow temperature.
- **FAN:** Press to increase or decrease the fan speed.



### REAR WINDOW DEFROSTER

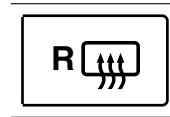
The rear defroster control is located on the instrument panel.

Press the rear defroster control to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. A small LED will illuminate when the rear defroster is activated.

The ignition must be in the on position to operate the rear window defroster.

The defroster turns off automatically after a predetermined amount of time or when the ignition is turned off. To manually turn off the defroster, press the control again.


**Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals from the inside of the rear window. This may cause damage to the heated grid lines and will not be covered by your warranty.**



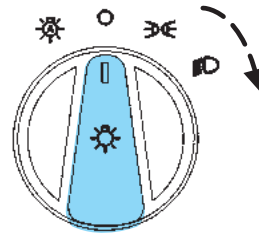
## Lights

### HEADLAMP CONTROL

 Turns the lamps off.

 Turns on the parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.

 Turns the headlamps on.



### Autolamp control

The autolamp system provides light sensitive automatic on-off control of the exterior lights normally controlled by the headlamp control.

The autolamp system also keeps the lights on for a preselected period of time after the ignition switch is turned to off.

The autolamps are turned on at night or when the front wipers are turned on.

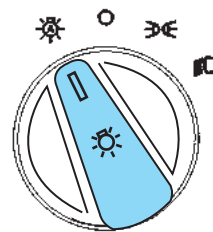
- To turn autolamps on, rotate the control counterclockwise. The preselected time lapse is adjustable up to approximately three minutes. See the programming procedure following.
- To turn autolamps off, rotate the control clockwise to the off position (O).

The amount of time the autolamps stay on can be programmed by doing the following:

1. Turn the ignition to off.
2. Turn the headlamp switch to the autolamp position.

**Note:** Steps 3 through 5 need to be performed within 10 seconds.

3. Turn the headlamp switch to off.
  4. Turn the ignition to on and then back to off.
  5. Turn the headlamp switch to the autolamp position.
- At this point, the exterior lamps turn on.



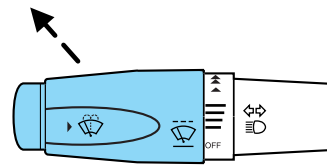
## Lights

6. Wait the desired amount of time for delay, then turn the headlamp switch to off.

- At this point, the exterior lamps turn off and the time delay is set.

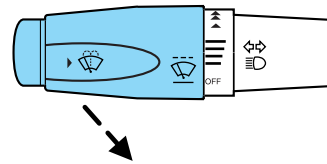
### High beams

Push the lever toward the instrument panel to activate. Pull the lever towards you to deactivate.



### Flash to pass

Pull toward you slightly to activate and release to deactivate.



### Daytime running lamps (DRL) (if equipped)

The daytime running light system turns the headlamps on, with a reduced light output, when:

- the ignition is on,
- the transmission is not in P (Park),
- the headlamp system is not turned on by another feature such as using the headlamp control or Autolamp.



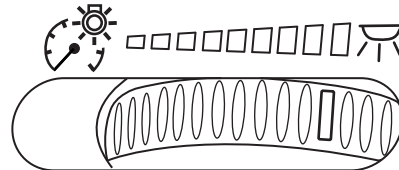
**WARNING:** Always remember to turn on your headlamps at dusk or during inclement weather. The Daytime Running Light (DRL) System does not activate the tail lamps and generally may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

## Lights

### PANEL DIMMER CONTROL

Use to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel during headlight and parking lamp operation.

- Rotate the thumbwheel from left to right to brighten the instrument panel.
- Rotate the thumbwheel from right to left to dim the instrument panel.



During full daylight, the instrument panel will still be visible with the headlamps operating.

### Dome lamp control

The panel dimmer control also controls the dome lamp operation.

- Rotate the thumbwheel fully to the right, past detent to activate the dome lamp and all interior lamps.
- In order to turn off these lamps, rotate the thumbwheel to the left.

### AIMING THE HEADLAMPS

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, the alignment of your headlamps should be checked by your authorized dealer.

### Vertical aim adjustment

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away. Check your headlamp alignment at night or in a dark area so that you can see the headlamp beam pattern.

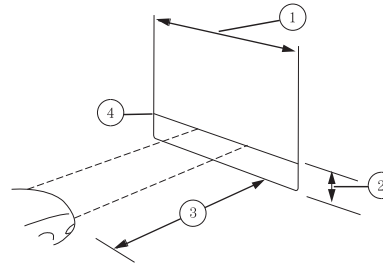
## Lights

- (1) 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- (2) Center height of lamp to ground
- (3) 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- (4) Horizontal reference line

2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height (a piece of masking tape works well).

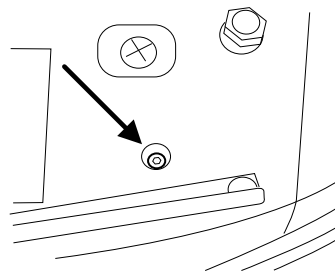
3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.

4. On the wall or screen you will observe an area of high intensity light. The top of the high intensity area should touch the horizontal reference line, if not, the beam will need to be adjusted.



To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.

5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a 4 mm wrench, turn the adjuster either clockwise (to adjust down) or counterclockwise (to adjust up). The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.



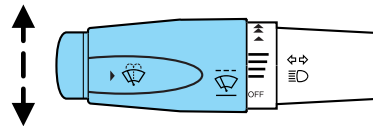
6. HORIZONTAL AIM IS NOT REQUIRED FOR THIS VEHICLE AND IS NON-ADJUSTABLE.

7. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

## Lights

### TURN SIGNAL CONTROL ⇐⇒

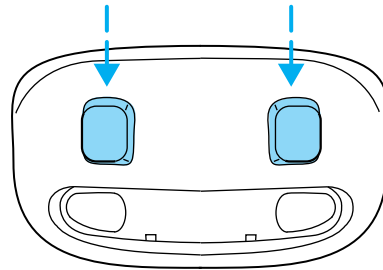
- Push down to activate the left turn signal.
- Push up to activate the right turn signal.



### INTERIOR LAMPS

#### Map/courtesy lamps

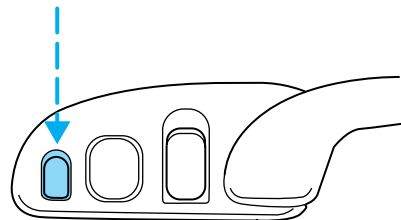
To turn on the map lamps, press the map lamp control.



#### Rear courtesy/reading lamps

The courtesy lamp lights when:

- the rocker control is pressed.
- any door is opened.
- any of the remote entry controls are pressed and the ignition is off.



### BULB REPLACEMENT

#### Lamp assembly condensation

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the

46

## Lights

lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets)
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens

Examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak) are:

- Water puddle inside the lamp
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens

Take your vehicle to dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

### Using the right bulbs

Replacement bulbs are specified in the following chart. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized "D.O.T." for North America and an "E" for Europe to ensure lamp performance, light brightness and pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb burn time.

Function	Trade Number
Headlamp (Hi beam)	9005
Headlamp (Low beam)*	H7
Park and turn lamp (front)	3457 AK
Sidemarkers (front)	168
Backup lamp	3156 K
Stop, tail, turn and sidemarkers lamp (rear)	3157 K
Cornering lamp	3156 K
License plate lamp	168
High-mount brakelamp - Stop**	LED assembly
Luggage compartment lamp	212-2
Map lamp	578
Visor vanity lamp - Slide on Rail system (SOR)	A6224PF

## Lights

Function	Trade Number
Rear grab handle reading lamps	578
Door courtesy lamp	904
Glove compartment	194
All replacement bulbs are clear in color except where noted.	
To replace all instrument panel lights - see your authorized dealer.	

\* For vehicles with HID lamps, see your authorized dealer for service.

\*\* When replacing the center high mount stop lamp assembly, see your authorized dealer for service.

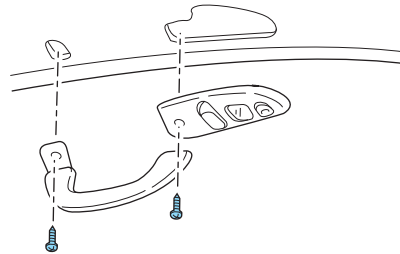
### Replacing interior bulbs

Check the operation of all bulbs frequently.

#### Rear courtesy/reading lamps

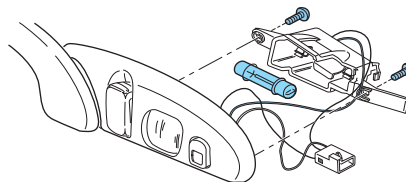
To replace the rear courtesy/reading lamp bulbs in the rear assist handle:

1. Make sure the headlamp control is in the off position.
2. Under the handle, remove two trim screw covers, retaining screws, lamp assembly and assist handle from the headliner.



3. Disconnect the electrical connector from the lamp assembly.
4. Remove the two screws on the lamp assembly.
5. Pull the bulb straight out.

To complete installation, follow the removal procedure in reverse order.



### Replacing exterior bulbs

Check the operation of all bulbs frequently.

48



## Lights

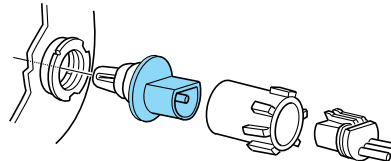
### Replacing headlamp bulbs

To remove the headlamp bulb:

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the hood.
2. Remove the three retainers on top of the radiator cover and the two retainers in front of the radiator cover.
3. Remove the three bolts for each headlamp.
4. Press the retainer next to the vertical aim adjuster, then pull the headlamp assembly forward and disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Remove the five screws and the protective bulb cover from the headlamp assembly.

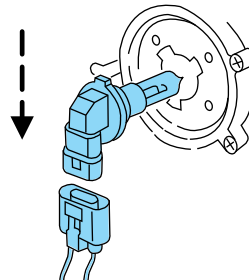
#### Low beam

- Disconnect the electrical connector and remove the retainer and headlamp bulb from the headlamp assembly.



#### High beam

- Remove the bulb by turning it counterclockwise, then pull it straight out.
- Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb.



**WARNING:** Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb only by its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

6. To complete installation, follow the removal procedure in reverse order.

**Note:** To ensure a good seal, attach the bulb cover and partially tighten the screws. Check to ensure the gasket is fully centered. Finish tightening the screws in a criss-cross pattern (upper-left, lower right etc.)

## Lights

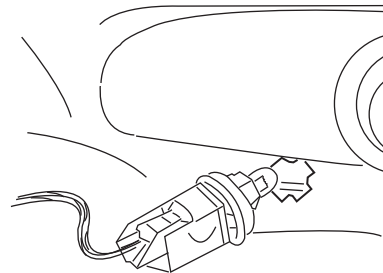
### **Replacing HID low beam headlamp bulbs (if equipped)**

The low beam headlamps on your vehicle use a “high intensity discharge” source. These lamps operate at a high voltage. When the bulb is burned out, the bulb and starter capsule assembly must be replaced by your authorized dealer.

### **Replacing front parking lamp/turn signal/sidemarkers bulbs**

The front parking lamp/turn signal/sidemarkers bulbs are located in the headlamp assembly. Follow the same steps to replace these bulbs.

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the hood.
2. Remove the retainers and the radiator cover.
3. Remove the bolts, then pull the headlamp assembly forward and disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove from lamp assembly.
5. Carefully pull bulb straight out of the socket and push in the new bulb until it snaps, locking it into position.
6. To complete installation, follow the removal procedure in reverse order.

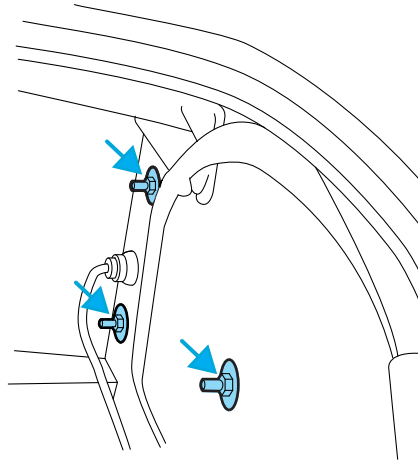


### **Replacing tail lamp/brake/turn lamp bulbs**

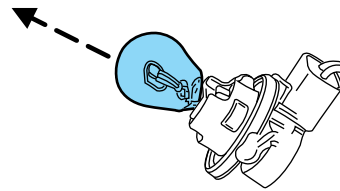
The tail lamp, the brake lamp and the turn signal lamp bulbs are located in the tail lamp assembly. Follow the same steps to replace these bulbs.

## Lights

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the trunk and remove the retainer.
2. Carefully pull the carpet away to expose the lamp assembly hardware.
3. Remove the three nut and washer assemblies, then pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.

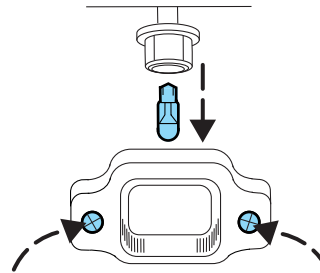


4. Remove the bulb socket by rotating it counterclockwise, then pull it out of the lamp assembly.
5. Pull the bulb from the socket and push in the new bulb.
6. To complete installation, follow the removal procedure in reverse order.



### **Replacing license plate lamp bulbs**

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position, then remove two screws, grommets and the license plate lamp assembly from the trunk lid.
2. Carefully pull the bulb from the socket and push in the new bulb.
3. Install the lamp assembly on the trunk lid with two grommets, ensuring the grommets are pushed all the way in to the trunk lid and secure with two screws.



## Lights

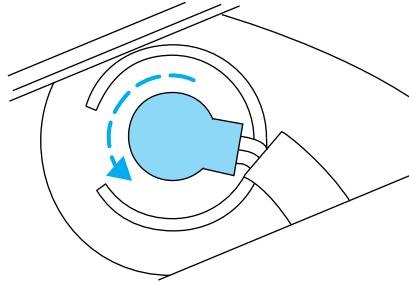
### **Replacing backup lamp bulbs**

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the trunk and carefully pull the trunk lid liner away to expose the lamp assembly.

2. Remove bulb socket from the trunk lid by turning it counterclockwise.

3. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket and push in the new bulb.

4. Install the bulb socket in trunk lid by turning clockwise.



### **Replacing high-mount brakelamp assembly**

To change the high-mount brakelamp assembly:

1. Remove the high-mount brakelamp assembly from the headliner by pulling downward on the assembly.

2. Disconnect the electrical connector and remove the assembly.

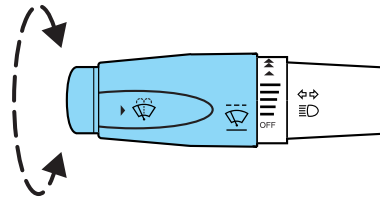
3. Install the new assembly by aligning the tabs and pushing upward until it snaps in place.



## Driver Controls

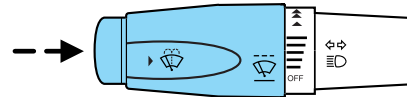
### MULTI-FUNCTION LEVER

**Windshield wiper:** Rotate the end of the control away from you to increase the speed of the wipers; rotate towards you to decrease the speed of the wipers.



**Windshield washer:** Press the end of the stalk:

- briefly: causes a single swipe of the wipers without washer fluid.
- a quick press and hold: the wipers will swipe three times with washer fluid.
- a long press and hold: the wipers and washer fluid will be activated for up to five seconds.



**Courtesy wipe feature:** One extra wipe will happen a few seconds after washing the front window to clear any water that is dripping down from the top of the windshield caused by the washing.

**Note:** Do not operate the washer when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat. Check the washer fluid level frequently. Do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades and cause the wiper motor to burn out. Before operating the wiper on a dry windshield, always use the windshield washer. In freezing weather, be sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield before operating the wipers.

### Windshield wiper/washer features

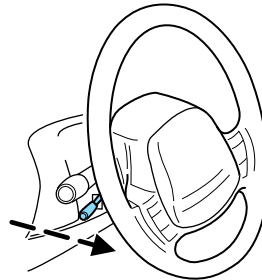
When the windshield wipers are turned on during daylight, and the headlamp control is in the autolamp position, the exterior lamps will turn on after a brief delay and will remain on until the wipers are turned off.

## Driver Controls

### TILT STEERING WHEEL

To adjust the steering wheel:

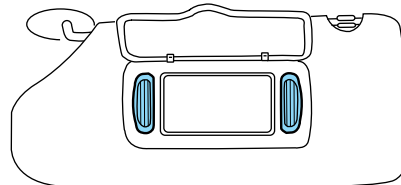
1. Pull and hold the steering wheel release control toward you.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down until you find the desired location.
3. Release the steering wheel release control. This will lock the steering wheel in position.



**WARNING:** Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.

### ILLUMINATED VISOR MIRROR (IF EQUIPPED)

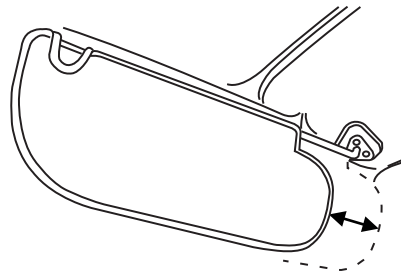
Lift the mirror cover to turn on the visor mirror lamps.



### Slide on rod feature (if equipped)

Rotate the visor towards the side window and extend it rearward for additional sunlight coverage.

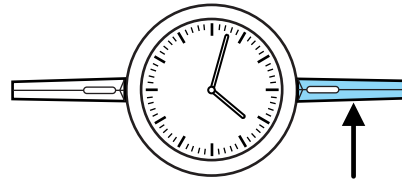
**Note:** To stow the visor back into the headliner, visor must be retracted before moving it back towards the windshield.



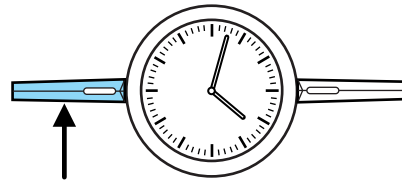
## Driver Controls

### CLOCK

Press the right control to move the time display forward.



Press the left control to move the time display backward.



### AUXILIARY POWER POINT (12VDC)

**Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not insert any other object in the power outlet as this will damage the outlet and blow the fuse. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty.**

The auxiliary power point is located under the instrument panel.

Do not use the power point for operating the cigarette lighter element (if equipped).

To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use the power point(s) over the vehicle capacity of 12 VDC/180W. If the power point or cigar lighter socket is not working, a fuse may have blown. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter for information on checking and replacing fuses.

To have full capacity usage of your power point, the engine is required to be running to avoid unintentional discharge of the battery. To prevent the battery from being discharged:

- do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running,
- do not leave battery chargers, video game adapters, computers and other devices plugged in overnight or when the vehicle is parked for extended periods.

Always keep the power point caps closed when not being used.

## Driver Controls

### REAR CENTER CONSOLE FEATURES (IF EQUIPPED)

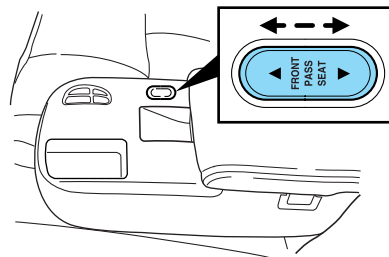
The rear center console incorporates the following features:

- Utility compartment
- Auxiliary power point (if equipped)
- Remote radio/climate controls (if equipped)
- Remote seat adjustment (if equipped)

#### Remote seat adjustment

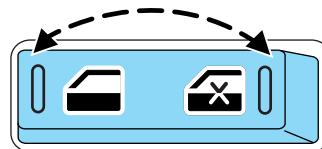
The rear passenger can move the front passenger seat forward or backward using the control located in the rear center console.

With the ignition is in the accessory position, move the control forward or backward to move front passenger seat.



#### Remote seat adjustment lockout

The window lockout control, located on the drivers door, will also lockout the remote seat adjustment. To lock out the remote seat adjustment feature, press the right side of the control. Press the left side to restore the remote seat adjustment control.



#### Rear console radio/climate controls (if equipped)

Refer to the *Entertainment Systems* and *Climate Controls* chapters for operation instructions.

#### Rear radio/climate controls lockout


The rear radio/climate control feature can be locked out by pressing the 3 and the 5 buttons on the radio simultaneously while the radio is on. To enable the rear radio/climate controls, press the 3 and the 5 buttons again.


56



## Driver Controls

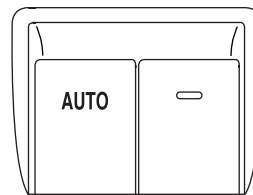
### POWER WINDOWS

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

 **WARNING:** When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

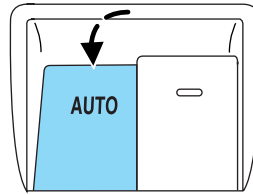
Press and pull the window switches to open and close windows.

- Press down (to the first detent) and hold the switch to open.
- Pull up (to the first detent) and hold the switch to close.



### One-touch down

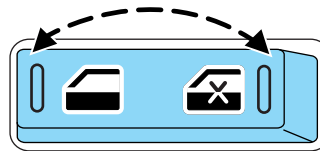
Allows the driver's window to open fully without holding the control down. Press the switch completely down to the second detent and release quickly. The window will open fully. Momentarily press the switch to any position to stop the window operation.



### Window lock

The window lock feature allows only the driver to operate the power windows.

To lock out all the window controls (except for the driver's) press the right side of the control. Press the left side to restore the window controls.



## Driver Controls

### Accessory delay

With accessory delay, the power window switches and radio may be used for up to 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned off or until any door is opened.

### INTERIOR MIRROR

The interior rear view mirror has two pivot points on the support arm which lets you adjust the mirror up or down and from side to side.



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.

### Automatic dimming interior rear view mirror (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an interior rear view mirror and a driver's side exterior mirror that have an auto-dimming function. The electronic day/night mirrors will change from the normal (high reflective) state to the non-glare (darkened) state when bright lights (glare) reach the interior mirror. When the interior mirror detects bright light from behind the vehicle, the interior rear view mirror and the driver's side exterior mirror (if equipped) will automatically adjust (darken) to minimize glare.

The mirrors will automatically return to the normal state whenever the vehicle is placed in R (Reverse) to ensure a bright clear view when backing up.

**Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the interior rear view mirror since this may impair proper mirror performance.**

**Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.**

### EXTERIOR MIRRORS

#### Power side view mirrors

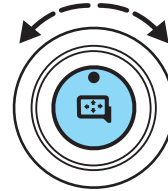


**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.

## Driver Controls

To adjust your mirrors:

1. Rotate the control clockwise to adjust the right mirror and rotate the control counterclockwise to adjust the left mirror.
2. Move the control in the direction you wish to tilt the mirror.
3. Return to the center position to lock mirrors in place.



### Memory feature (if equipped)

The power side view mirror positions are saved when doing a memory set function and can be recalled along with the vehicle personality features when a memory position is selected through the remote entry transmitter, keyless entry keypad or memory switch on the driver's door. Refer to *Memory seats/outside rear view mirrors/adjustable pedals* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.

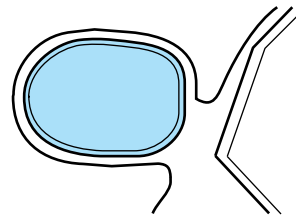
### Auto-dimming feature (if equipped)

For the auto-dimming feature on the driver's side view mirror, refer to *Automatic dimming interior rear view mirror* in this chapter.

### Heated outside mirrors (if equipped)

Both mirrors are heated automatically to remove ice, mist and fog when the rear window defrost is activated.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with the auto dimming feature, the mirror glass is thicker and will take longer to defrost.



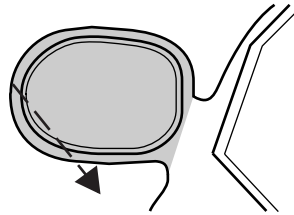
**Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to readjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.**

**Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.**

## Driver Controls

### Fold-away mirrors

Pull the side mirrors in carefully when driving through a narrow space, like an automatic car wash.

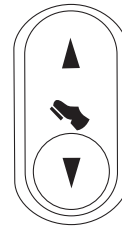


### POWER ADJUSTABLE FOOT PEDALS (IF EQUIPPED)

The accelerator and brake pedal should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stopped and the gearshift lever is in the P (Park) position.

Press and hold the rocker control to adjust accelerator and brake pedal.

- Press the bottom of the control to adjust the pedals toward you.
- Press the top of the control to adjust the pedals away from you.



**WARNING:** Never adjust the accelerator and brake pedal with feet on the pedals while the vehicle is moving.

### SPEED CONTROL

With speed control set, you can maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.



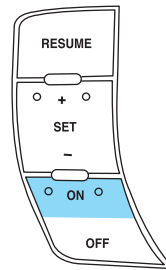
**WARNING:** Do not use the speed control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.


## Driver Controls

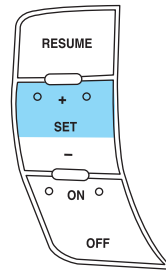
### Setting speed control

The controls for using your speed control are located on the steering wheel for your convenience.

1. Press the ON control and release it.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.



3. Press the SET + control and release it.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.
5. The  light will be displayed in the instrument cluster.



### Note:

- Vehicle speed may vary momentarily when driving up and down a steep hill.
- If the vehicle speed increases above the set speed on a downhill, you may want to apply the brakes to reduce the speed.
- If the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed on an uphill, your speed control will disengage.

### Disengaging speed control

To disengage the speed control:

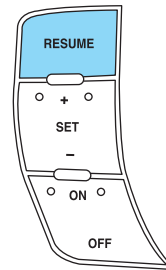
- Press the brake pedal

Disengaging the speed control will not erase previous set speed.

## Driver Controls

### **Resuming a set speed**

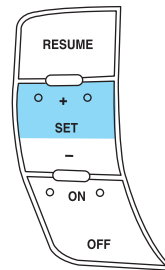
Press the RESUME control and release it. This will automatically return the vehicle to the previously set speed.



### **Increasing speed while using speed control**

There are two ways to set a higher speed:

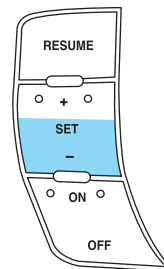
- Press and hold the SET + control until you get to the desired speed, then release the control. You can also use the SET + control to operate the tap-up function. Press and release this control to increase the vehicle set speed in small amounts by 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the desired speed. When the vehicle reaches that speed press and release the SET + control.



### **Reducing speed while using speed control**

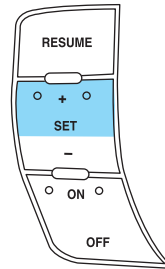
There are two ways to reduce a set speed:

- Press and hold the SET - control until you get to the desired speed, then release the control. You can also use the SET - control to operate the tap-down function. Press and release this control to decrease the vehicle set speed in small amounts by 1 mph (1.6 km/h).



## Driver Controls

- Press the brake pedal until the desired vehicle speed is reached, press the SET + control.

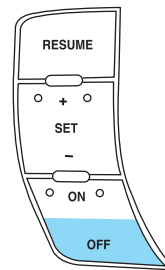


### Turning off speed control

There are two ways to turn off the speed control:

- Press the brake pedal. This will not erase your vehicle's previously set speed.
- Press the speed control OFF control.

**Note:** When you turn the speed control or the ignition off, your speed control set speed memory is erased.



## STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS (IF EQUIPPED)

### Audio control features

In radio mode:

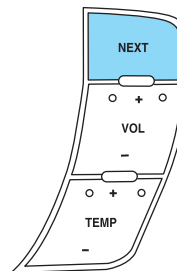
- Press NEXT to select the next preset station within the current radio band.

In tape mode:

- Press NEXT to listen to the next selection on the tape.

In CD mode:

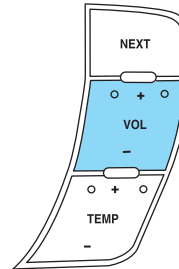
- Press NEXT to listen to the next track on the disc.



## Driver Controls

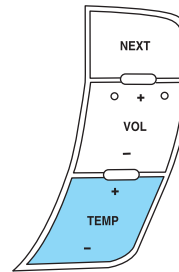
In any mode:

- Press VOL + or - to adjust the volume.



### ***Climate control features (if equipped)***

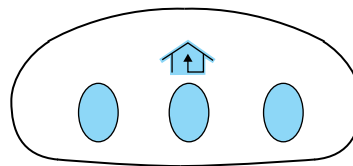
- Press TEMP + or - to adjust temperature.



### **UNIVERSAL GARAGE DOOR OPENER (IF EQUIPPED)**

The appearance of your vehicle's universal garage door opener will vary according to your option package. Before programming, make sure your transmitter matches the graphic in the procedure.

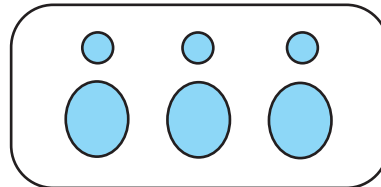
#### **HomeLink®**





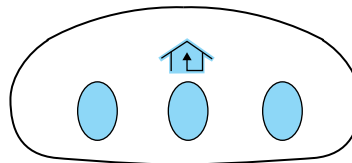
## Driver Controls

### Car2U® Home Automation System



### HomeLink® Wireless Control System (if equipped)

The HomeLink® Wireless Control System, located on the driver's visor, provides a convenient way to replace up to three hand-held transmitters with a single built-in device. This feature will learn the radio frequency codes of most transmitters to operate garage doors, entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks, and home or office lighting.



**WARNING:** When programming your HomeLink® Wireless Control System to a garage door or gate, be sure that people and objects are out of the way to prevent potential injury or damage.

Do not use the HomeLink® Wireless Control System with any garage door opener that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by U.S. federal safety standards (this includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current U.S. federal safety standards. For more information, contact HomeLink® at: [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or **1-800-355-3515**.

Retain the original transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future programming procedures (i.e. new HomeLink® equipped vehicle purchase). It is also suggested that upon the sale of the vehicle, the programmed Homelink® buttons be erased for security purposes, refer to *Programming* in this section.

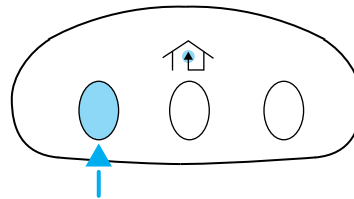
## Driver Controls

### Programming

**Do not program HomeLink® with the vehicle parked in the garage.**

**Note:** Your vehicle may require the ignition switch to be turned to the accessory position for programming and/or operation of the HomeLink®. It is also recommended that a new battery be placed in the hand-held transmitter of the device being programmed to HomeLink® for quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

1. Position the end of your hand-held transmitter 1–3 inches (2–8 cm) away from the HomeLink® button you wish to program (located on your visor) while keeping the indicator light in view.



2. Simultaneously press and hold both the chosen HomeLink® and hand-held transmitter buttons until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapidly blinking light. Now you may release both the HomeLink® and hand-held transmitter buttons.

**Note:** Some entry gates and garage door openers may require you to replace Step 2 with procedures noted in the *Gate Operator and Canadian Programming* in this section for Canadian residents.

3. Firmly **press and hold for five seconds and release** the programmed HomeLink® button up to two separate times to activate the door. If the door does not activate, press and hold the just-trained HomeLink® button and observe the indicator light.

- If the indicator light **stays on constantly, programming is complete** and your device should activate when the HomeLink® button is pressed and released.

- If the indicator light blinks **rapidly for two seconds and then turns to a constant light continue with “Programming” Steps 4 through 6** to complete programming of a rolling code equipped device (most commonly a garage door opener).

4. At the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit) in the garage, locate the “learn” or “smart” button (usually near where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the unit).

5. Firmly press and release the “learn” or “smart” button. (The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.)

**Note:** There are 30 seconds in which to initiate Step 6.

6. Return to the vehicle and firmly **press, hold for two seconds and release** the programmed HomeLink® button. Repeat the

66

## Driver Controls

**press/hold/release** sequence again and, depending on the brand of the garage door opener (or other rolling code equipped device), repeat this sequence a third time to complete the programming.

HomeLink® should now activate your rolling code equipped device. To program additional HomeLink® buttons begin with Step 1 in this section. For questions or comments, please contact HomeLink® at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or **1-800-355-3515**.

### Gate Operator & Canadian Programming

During programming, your hand-held transmitter may automatically stop transmitting — not allowing enough time for HomeLink® to accept the signal from the hand-held transmitter.

After completing Step 1 outlined in the *Programming* section, replace Step 2 with the following:

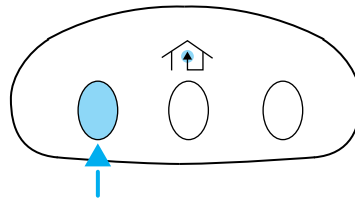
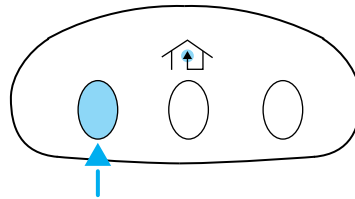
**Note:** If programming a garage door opener or gate operator, it is advised to unplug the device during the “cycling” process to prevent overheating.

- Continue to press and hold the HomeLink® button (note Step 2 in the *Programming* section) while you press and release — **every two seconds** (“cycle”) your hand-held transmitter until the frequency signal has been accepted by the HomeLink®. The indicator light will flash slowly and then rapidly after HomeLink® accepts the radio frequency signal.
- Proceed with Step 3 in the *Programming* section.

### Operating the HomeLink® Wireless Control System

To operate, simply press and release the appropriate HomeLink® button. Activation will now occur for the trained product (garage door, gate operator, security system, entry door lock, or home or office lighting etc.). For convenience, the hand-held transmitter of the device

may also be used at any time. In the event that there are still programming difficulties, contact HomeLink® at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or **1-800-355-3515**.

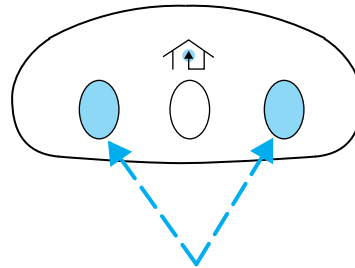


## Driver Controls

### **Erasing HomeLink® buttons**

To erase the three programmed buttons (individual buttons cannot be erased):

- Press and hold the two outer HomeLink® buttons until the indicator light begins to flash-after 20 seconds. Release both buttons. Do not hold for longer than 30 seconds.



HomeLink® is now in the train (or learning) mode and can be programmed at any time beginning with Step 1 in the *Programming* section.

### **Reprogramming a single HomeLink® button**

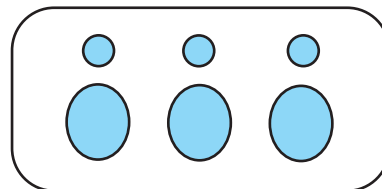
To program a device to HomeLink® using a HomeLink® button previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button. **Do NOT** release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the HomeLink® button, follow Step 1 in the *Programming* section.

For questions or comments, contact HomeLink® at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or **1-800-355-3515**.

### **Car2U® Home Automation System (if equipped)**

The Car2U® Home Automation System is a universal transmitter located in the driver's visor that includes two primary features – a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices within the home. The Car2U® system's garage door opener function replaces the common hand-held garage door opener with a three-button transmitter that is integrated into the interior of your vehicle. After being programmed for garage doors, the Car2U® system transmitter can be programmed to operate security devices and home lighting systems.



68

## Driver Controls



**WARNING:** Make sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or security device you are programming. Do not program the Car2U® system with the vehicle in the garage.

Do not use the Car2U® system with any garage door opener that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by U.S. Federal Safety Standards (this includes any garage door opener manufactured before April 1, 1982).

Be sure to keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future Car2U® system programming. It is also recommended that upon the sale or lease termination of the vehicle, the programmed Car2U® system buttons should be erased for security reasons. Refer to *Erasing the Car2U® Home Automation System buttons* later in this section.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the Car2U® system. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person assist you in programming the transmitter.

Additional Car2U® system information can be found on-line at [www.learcar2U.com](http://www.learcar2U.com) or by calling the toll-free Car2U® system help line at 1-866-572-2728.

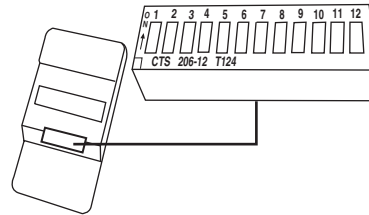
### ***Types of garage door openers (rolling code and fixed code)***

The Car2U® Home Automation System may be programmed to operate rolling code and fixed code garage door openers.

- Rolling code garage door openers were produced after 1996 and are code protected. Rolling code means the coded signal is changed every time your remote control garage door opener is used.
- Fixed code garage door openers were produced prior to 1996. Fixed code uses the same coded signal every time. It is manually programmed by setting DIP switches for a unique personal code.

## Driver Controls

If you do not know if your garage door opener is a rolling code or fixed code device, open your garage door opener's remote control battery cover. If a panel of DIP switches is present your garage door opener is a fixed code device. If not, your garage door opener is a rolling code device.



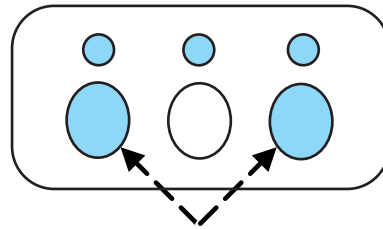
### ***Rolling code programming***

**Note:** Programming the rolling code garage door opener involves time-sensitive actions. Read the entire procedure prior to beginning so you will know which actions are time-sensitive. If you do not follow the time-sensitive actions, the device will time out and you will have to repeat the procedure.

**Note:** Do not program the Car2U® system with the vehicle in the garage.

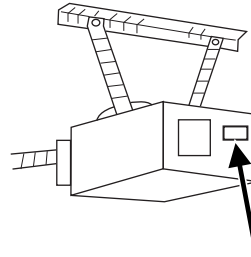
Make sure that your key is on and engine off while programming the transmitter.

1. Firmly press the two outer Car2U® system buttons for 1–2 seconds, then release.

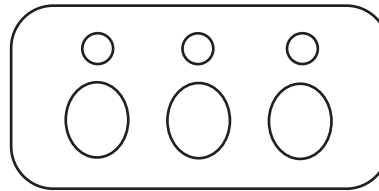


## Driver Controls

2. Go to the garage to locate the garage door opener motor and its “learn” button. You may need a ladder to reach the unit and you may need to remove the unit’s cover or light lens to locate the “learn” button. Press the “learn” button, after which you will have 10–30 seconds to return to your vehicle and complete the following steps. If you cannot locate the “learn” button, refer to the Owner’s Guide of your garage door opener or call the toll-free Car2U® system help line at 1-866-57Car2U (1-866-572-2728).



3. Return to your vehicle. Press and hold the Car2U® system button you would like to use to control the garage door. You may need to hold the button from 5–20 seconds, during which time the selected button indicator light will blink slowly. Immediately (within 1 second) release the button once the garage door moves. When the button is released, the indicator light will begin to blink rapidly until programming is complete.



4. Press and release the button again. The garage door should move, confirming that programming is successful. If your garage door does not operate, repeat the previous steps in this section.

After successful programming, you will be able to operate your Car2U® system by pressing the button you programmed to activate the opener. The indicator light above the selected button will turn on to confirm that the Car2U® system is responding to the button command.

To program another rolling code device such as an additional garage door opener, a security device or home lighting, repeat Steps 1 through 4 substituting a different function button in Step 3 than what you used for the garage door opener. For example, you could assign the left-most button to the garage door, the center button to a security device, and the right-most button to another garage door opener.

## Driver Controls

**Note:** The Car2U® system allows for three devices to be programmed. If you need to change or replace any of the three devices after it has been initially programmed, it is necessary to erase the current settings using the *Erasing the Car2U® Home Automation System buttons* procedure and then programming all of the devices being used.

### Fixed code programming

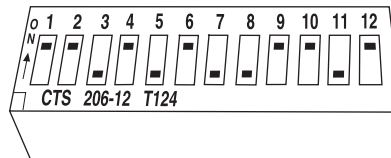
**Note:** Do not program the Car2U® system with the vehicle in the garage. Make sure that your key is on and engine off while programming the transmitter.

1. To program units with fixed code DIP switches, you will need the garage door hand-held transmitter, paper and a pen or pencil.
2. Open the battery cover and record the switch settings from left to right for all 8 to 12 switches. Use the figure below:

When a switch is in the up, on, or + position, circle “L.”

When a switch is in the middle, neutral, or 0 position, circle “M.”

When a switch is in the down, off, or – position, circle “R.”

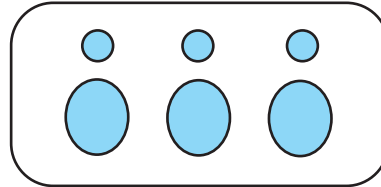


Switch position	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Up, on or +	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L
Middle, neutral or 0	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M
Down, off or –	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
L=left; M=middle; R=right												



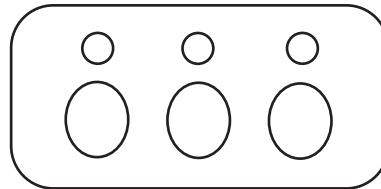
## Driver Controls

3. To input these positions into the Car2U® system, simultaneously press all three Car2U® system buttons for a few seconds and then release to put the device into programming mode. The indicator lights will blink slowly. Within 2.5 minutes enter your corresponding DIP switch settings from left to right into your Car2U® system by pressing and releasing the buttons corresponding to the settings you circled.



4. After inputting switch settings, simultaneously press and release all three Car2U® system buttons. The indicator lights will turn on.

5. Press and hold the Car2U® system button you would like to use to control the garage door. Immediately (within 1 second) release the button once the garage door moves. During this time the selected button indicator light will blink slowly. Do not release the button until you see the garage door move. Most garage doors open quickly. You may need to hold the button from 5–55 seconds before observing movement of the garage door.



6. The indicator light will (begin to) blink rapidly until programming is complete. If your garage door opener does not operate following these steps, repeat Steps 2 through 6. Otherwise, call the toll-free Car2U® help line at 1-866-57Car2U (1-866-572-2728).

After successful programming, you will be able to operate your Car2U® system by pressing the button you programmed to activate the opener. The indicator light above the selected button will turn on to confirm that the Car2U® system is responding to the button command.

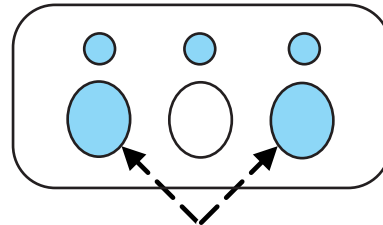
### **Erasing the Car2U® Home Automation System buttons**

**Note:** The system allows for three devices to be programmed. If you need to change or replace any of the three devices after it has been initially programmed, it will be necessary to erase the current settings using the procedure below and then reprogramming all of the devices being used.

## Driver Controls

To erase programming on the Car2U® system (individual buttons cannot be erased), use the following procedure:

1. Firmly press the two outside Car2U® system buttons simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the indicator lights begin to blink rapidly. The indicator lights are located directly above the buttons.



2. Once the indicator lights begin to blink, release your fingers from the buttons. The codes for all buttons are erased.

If you sell your vehicle equipped with the Car2U® system, it is recommended that you erase the programming for security reasons.

### **FCC and RSS-210 Industry Canada Compliance**

The Car2U® system complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes and modifications to the Car2U® system transmitter by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use the equipment.

### **POWER TRUNK (IF EQUIPPED)**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a power trunk controlled by the interior trunk control, the key fob or the keypad on the door.

If anything obstructs the power trunk while it is closing, the trunk will automatically reverse to the open position, provided it meets sufficient resistance. Resistance must be as strong as the force of the closing trunk, or stronger. The force of the closing trunk increases as the trunk approaches the latched position. The trunk will close with the next press of the interior trunk control or key fob button.



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the luggage compartment area before using the power trunk control.

## Driver Controls

If the battery is disconnected, discharged, or a new battery is installed, the power trunk needs to be reset. To reset the power trunk:

- Reconnect the battery with the trunk closed
- Power activate the trunk with the power interior trunk release, the key fob or the keypad on the door to the full open position, then power activate the same power source and fully close the trunk. The power trunk is now reset.

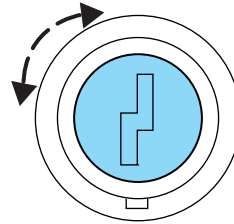
### INTERIOR TRUNK CONTROL

The remote trunk release control is located on the driver's door trim panel and can be operated at any time except when your perimeter alarm system is armed.

If your vehicle is equipped with a power trunk, press the button once to open the trunk, press it again to close.

You can render the switch inoperable by locking the button with your master key.

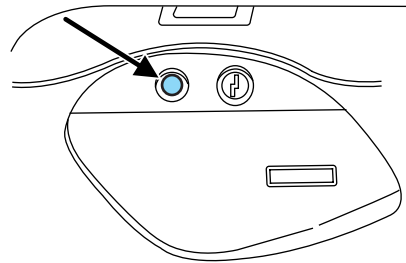
The remote trunk release control and power door locks will be disabled when the vehicle perimeter alarm system is armed. This control will not work until the vehicle perimeter alarm system is disarmed. Refer to *Perimeter alarm system* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.



## Driver Controls

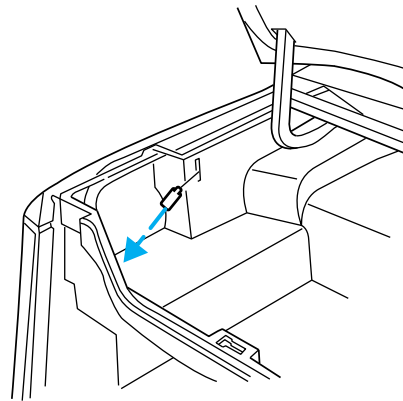
### FUEL DOOR RELEASE

Your vehicle is equipped with a locking fuel door. To open the door, press the control located on the door.



### Fuel filler door override release

If the remote release is inoperative, open the trunk, then pull the override release handle located inside the trunk to open the fuel filler door.



## Locks and Security



### KEYS

Your vehicle is equipped with a master key and a valet (identified with the word VALET) key lock system.

- The master key will access the vehicle's doors, trunk, glove box, ignition and remote trunk release.
- The valet key will access doors and ignition only.

Before using the valet key with an attendant, lock the interior trunk control to disable the interior trunk control located on the drivers door, then lock the glove compartment with your master key. Do not hand over the remote entry transmitter or the master key to the valet attendant. For more information, refer to *Interior trunk control* in the *Driver Controls* chapter.

### POWER DOOR LOCKS

- Press the  control to unlock all doors.
- Press the  control to lock all doors.



### Power door trim switch inhibit

This feature disables the power door locks and trunk interior release switches if all doors are closed and the perimeter alarm becomes armed.

Once the power door trim switches are disabled, they can only become active when perimeter alarm is disarmed.

### Smart locks

With the key in the ignition, in any switch position, and either the driver's or passenger's door open, the doors cannot be locked using the power door lock switches.

### Central locking/unlocking

- All doors are locked when the key is inserted into the driver door key cylinder and turned to the lock position.
- The driver's door is unlocked when the key is inserted into the driver door key cylinder and turned to the unlock position.
- If the key is turned a second time to the unlock position within five seconds, all vehicle doors will unlock.

## Locks and Security

### **Autolock**

This feature automatically locks all vehicle doors when the following conditions are met:

- all the doors are closed,
- the engine is running,
- you shift into gear, putting the vehicle in motion, and
- the vehicle's speed is greater than 3 mph (5 km/h).

### **Autorelock**

The autolock feature repeats when:

- a door is opened and closed while the engine is running,
- you shift into any gear, putting the vehicle in motion, and
- the vehicle's speed is greater than 3 mph (5 km/h).

### **Autounlock**

The auto-unlock feature will unlock all doors when:

- the ignition has been in the on position, all doors are closed, and the vehicle has been in motion at a speed greater than 3 mph (5 km/h),
- the vehicle has then come to a stop and the ignition is turned to the accessory or off position, and
- the driver door is opened (within ten minutes after the ignition was transitioned to the accessory or off position).

**Note:** The vehicle doors will not auto-unlock if the vehicle has been electronically locked prior to the driver door being opened.

### ***Deactivating/activating the autolock or autounlock feature***

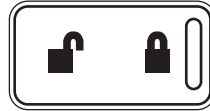
Autolocking and autounlocking are independent features; either feature may be enabled or disabled without affecting the other.

You must complete Steps 1-7 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, you must wait at least 30 seconds. **Note:** Before following the procedure, make sure that the ignition is in the off position and all vehicle doors, the hood, and the decklid are closed.

78

## Locks and Security

1. Turn the ignition to the on position.
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the on to the off position.
4. Press the power door unlock control three times.
5. Turn the ignition back to the on position.
6. The door locks will lock/unlock to confirm programming mode is entered/active.
7. With the ignition still in the on position, **for the autolock feature**, press the unlock control once then press the lock control once. The horn will chirp once to confirm successful programming. **For the autounlock feature**, press the lock control once, then press the unlock control once. The horn will chirp once if autounlock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autounlock was activated.



If any door, the hood, or the deck lid is open, the horn will chirp twice, and the procedure will need to be performed again.

8. After having waited the necessary time for the programming to confirm, turn the ignition to the off position.

Once disabled, the autolock autounlock feature can be enabled by repeating the procedure in Steps 1–8.

### CHILDPROOF DOOR LOCKS

- When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.
- The rear doors can be opened from the outside when the doors are unlocked.

The childproof locks are located on rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door. Setting the lock for one door will not automatically set the lock for both doors.



- Move lock control up to engage the childproof lock.
- Move control down to disengage childproof locks.

## Locks and Security

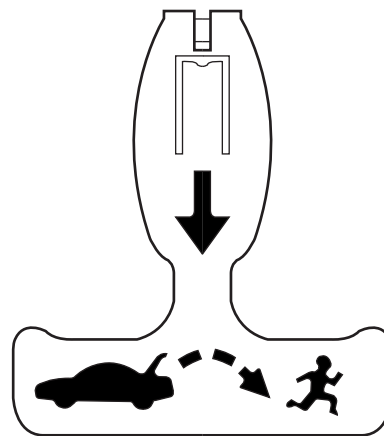
### INTERIOR LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT RELEASE

Your vehicle is equipped with a mechanical interior luggage compartment release handle that provides a means of escape for children and adults in the event they become locked inside the luggage compartment.

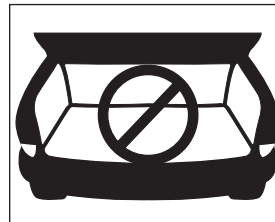
Adults are advised to familiarize themselves with the operation and location of the release handle.

To open the luggage compartment door (lid) from within the luggage compartment, pull the illuminated “T” shaped handle and push up on the trunk lid. The handle is composed of a material that will glow for hours in darkness following brief exposure to ambient light.

The “T” shaped handle will be located either on the luggage compartment door (lid) or inside the luggage compartment near the tail lamps.



**WARNING:** Keep vehicle doors and luggage compartment locked and keep keys and remote transmitters out of a child's reach. Unsupervised children could lock themselves in the trunk and risk injury. Children should be taught not to play in vehicles.





## Locks and Security



**WARNING:** Do not leave children, unreliable adults, or animals unattended in the vehicle. On hot days, the temperature in the trunk or vehicle interior can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat-related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

### REMOTE ENTRY SYSTEM

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### Radio type approval numbers for remote entry receiver

If the type approval of your remote entry system is inspected in one of the countries listed in the following table, refer to the corresponding approval number:

Remote entry receiver certification numbers	
Gabon	01070305/ARTEL/GABTEL
Jordan	CAZ/ENG/CA/04/11/1
Zambia	TRC/LPD/2004/28

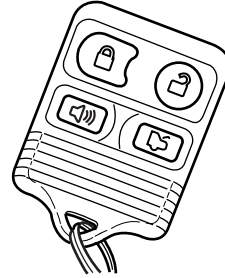
**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

The typical operating range for your remote entry transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions,
- nearby radio towers,
- structures around the vehicle, or
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.



## Locks and Security

The remote entry system allows you to lock or unlock all vehicle doors without a key. **Note:** The remote entry features operate with the ignition in any position except in the on position, when the transmission is in any gear other than P (Park) or N (Neutral).



If there are problems with the remote entry system, make sure to take **ALL remote entry transmitters** with you to the authorized dealer in order to aid in troubleshooting the problem.

### Unlocking the doors

1. Press  and release to unlock the driver's door. **Note:** The interior lamps will illuminate.
2. Press  and release again within five seconds to unlock all the doors.

### Security lighting


Your vehicle's headlamps and park lamps will illuminate if:

- it is dark outside (evening),
- the headlamp control is in the autolamp position, and
- the unlock control is pressed on the remote entry transmitter.


The headlamps and parklamps remain illuminated:

- for 25 seconds, or
- until you turn the ignition from the off position, or
- until the vehicle doors are locked using the remote entry transmitter or the power door unlock control.


### Locking the doors

Press  and release to lock all the doors. **Note:** The interior lamps will turn off and the parklamps will flash, if all the closures (doors, trunk, hood) are closed. If any closure is not closed, the parklamps will **not** flash.

## Locks and Security


Press  and release again within five seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. **Note:** The doors will lock again, the horn will chirp once and the parklamps will flash, if all the closures are closed. If any closure is not closed, the horn will chirp twice and the parklamps will **not** flash.

### Car finder

Press  twice within three seconds. The horn will chirp and the parklamps/tail lamps will flash. It is recommended that this method be used to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

### Opening the trunk

Press  once to open the trunk.

If your vehicle is fitted with the optional power decklid, press  twice to open the trunk and twice to close it.





**WARNING:** Before operating the power decklid, be sure that no one, particularly a child, is in a position where he or she can be injured by the trunk lid. NEVER leave the remote entry transmitter where it can be inadvertently activated, as someone could be seriously injured by a moving decklid.

- Ensure that the trunk is closed and latched before driving your vehicle. Failure to properly latch the trunk may cause objects to fall out or block the driver's rear view.

The remote entry system allows you to open the trunk while the ignition is in any position. However, if the ignition is in the on position and the gearshift is in D (Drive), the trunk will only open if the vehicle is moving 3 mph (5 km/h) or slower.

### Sounding a panic alarm

Press  on the remote transmitter to activate the alarm. **Note:** The panic alarm only works with the ignition in the off position.


Press  a second time to deactivate the alarm. You may also deactivate the alarm in the following ways:

- Turn the ignition to the on or start positions.
- Wait two minutes and 45 seconds for the alarm to time-out.

## Locks and Security

### Memory seat/mirrors/adjustable pedals feature (if equipped)

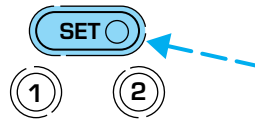
The remote keyless entry system can also control the memory seats/mirrors/adjustable pedals feature. With this feature, the first two programmed transmitters will recall a different memory position.

Press  once to unlock the driver's door and move the memory features to the corresponding memory position, just as if you had pressed the memory control in the vehicle.

### Activating the memory seat/mirrors/adjustable pedals feature

To activate this feature:

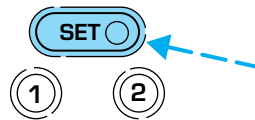
1. Position the seat, mirrors and adjustable pedals to the position desired.
2. Press the SET control on the driver's door panel.
3. Within five seconds, press one control on the remote transmitter and then press the 1 or 2 button on the driver's door panel to which you would like to associate with the memory positions and Driver 1 or Driver 2 positions.
4. Repeat this procedure for another remote transmitter, if desired.



### Deactivating the memory seat/mirrors/adjustable pedals feature

To deactivate this feature:

1. Press the SET control on the driver's door panel.
2. Within five seconds, press one control on the remote transmitter which you would like to deactivate and then press the SET control on the driver's door panel .
3. Repeat this procedure for another remote transmitter, if desired.



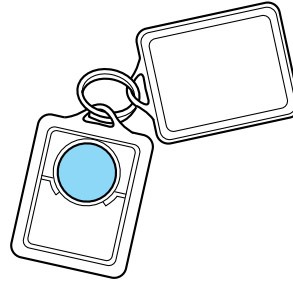
### Replacing the battery

The remote entry transmitter uses one coin type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

## Locks and Security

To replace the battery:

1. Twist a thin coin between the two halves of the remote entry transmitter near the key ring. **DO NOT TAKE THE RUBBER COVER AND CIRCUIT BOARD OFF THE FRONT HOUSING OF THE REMOTE ENTRY TRANSMITTER.**



2. Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals on the back surface of the circuit board.

3. Remove the old battery.

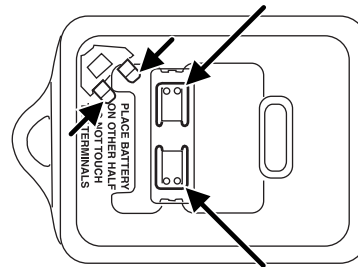
**Note:** Please refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

4. Insert the new battery. Refer to the diagram inside the remote entry transmitter for the correct orientation of the battery.

Press the battery down to ensure that the battery is fully seated in the battery housing cavity.

5. Snap the two halves back together.

**Note:** Replacement of the battery will **not** cause the remote transmitter to become deprogrammed from your vehicle. The remote transmitter should operate normally after battery replacement.



### Replacing lost remote entry transmitters

If you would like to have your remote entry transmitter reprogrammed because you lost one, or would like to buy additional remote entry transmitters, you can either reprogram them yourself, or take **all remote entry transmitters** to your authorized dealer for reprogramming.

### How to reprogram your remote entry transmitters

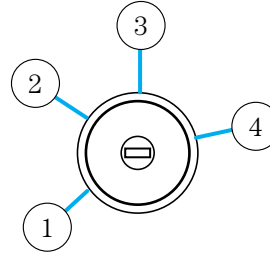
You must have **all remote entry transmitters** (maximum of four) available before beginning this procedure. **Note:** Do not depress the brake pedal at any time during this procedure. If the brake pedal is pressed at any time during this procedure, programming mode will be exited and the entire procedure must be repeated.

## Locks and Security

**Note:** Ensure the brake pedal is not pressed during this sequence.

To reprogram the remote entry transmitters:

1. Ensure the vehicle is electronically unlocked.
2. Put the key in the ignition.
3. Cycle eight times rapidly (within 10 seconds) between the 1 (off) position and the 3 (on) position. **Note:** The eighth turn must end in the 3 (on) position.
4. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that the programming mode has been activated.
5. Within 20 seconds press any button on the remote entry transmitter.  
**Note:** If more than 20 seconds have passed you will need to start the procedure over again.
6. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that this remote entry transmitter has been programmed.
7. Repeat Step 5 to program each additional remote entry transmitter.
8. Turn the ignition to the 1 (off) position after you have finished programming all of the remote entry transmitters. **Note:** After 20 seconds, you will automatically exit the programming mode.
9. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that the programming mode has been exited.



### Illuminated entry

The interior lamps illuminate when the remote entry system is used to unlock the door(s) or sound the personal alarm.

The illuminated entry system will turn off the interior lights if:

- the ignition switch is turned to the on or the accessory position, or
- the remote transmitter lock control is pressed, or
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

The dimmer panel control must **not** be set to the **off** position for the illuminated entry system to operate.

## Locks and Security

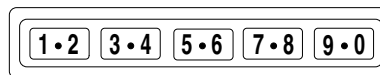
The inside lights will not turn off if:

- they have been turned on with the dimmer control, or
- any door is open.

The battery saver will shut off the interior lamps 30 minutes after the last door is closed, or after 10 minutes if the last door is left open.

### SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

You can use the keyless entry keypad to:



- lock or unlock the doors without using a key.
- open the trunk.

The keypad can be operated with the factory set 5-digit entry code; this code is located on the owner's wallet card in the glove box and is available from your authorized dealer. You can also create your own 5-digit personal entry code.

When pressing the controls on the keypad, press the middle of the controls to ensure a good activation.

### Programming a personal entry code

To create your own personal entry code:

1. Enter the factory set code.
2. Within five seconds press the 1 • 2 on the keypad.
3. Enter your personal 5-digit code. Each number must be entered within five seconds of each other.
4. Enter a sixth digit to indicate which personality feature should be recalled by the personal code.
  - 1 • 2 recalls driver personality 1.
  - 3 • 4 recalls driver personality 2.
  - 5 • 6, 7 • 8 and 9 • 0 do not recall a driver personality.

All of the vehicle doors will lock and unlock to confirm programming of the new code. Each driver personality profile (personality 1 or personality 2) can be associated with only one personal code. The factory-set code cannot be associated with a personality code.

You can program up to three personal codes to unlock your vehicle. These codes do not replace the permanent code that was provided by your authorized dealer.

## Locks and Security

### Tips for setting codes:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.

### Erasing personal codes

1. Enter the factory set 5–digit code. The keyless entry keypad and interior lights will illuminate and the driver's door will unlock.
2. Press and release the 1 • 2 within five seconds of completing Step 1.
3. Press and hold the 1 • 2 for two seconds to erase the customer programmed codes. All of the vehicle doors will lock and then unlock to confirm erasure.

All personal codes are now erased and only the factory set 5–digit code will work.

**Note:** To exit programming mode, either wait 5 seconds after pressing 1 • 2 on the keypad, or press the 7 • 8 and 9 • 0 pads simultaneously to lock all vehicle doors and end programming mode.

### Unlocking and locking the doors using keyless entry keypad

**To unlock the driver's door,** enter the factory set 5–digit code or your personal code. Each number must be pressed within five seconds of each other. **Note:** The driver's door will unlock and the interior lamps will illuminate after the factory set 5–digit code or your personal code are correctly entered.

**To unlock all doors,** press the 3 • 4 control within five seconds.

**To lock all doors,** press the 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 at the same time. You **do not** need to enter the keypad code first. **Note:** The interior lamps will turn off. If the driver's door is ajar, the doors will not lock.

### Releasing the trunk with the keyless entry system

To release/open the trunk, enter the factory-set code or personal code (driver door unlocks) and press 5 • 6 within five seconds.

If your vehicle is equipped with the optional power decklid, pressing 5 • 6 again will close it (you may need to reenter the keypad code again).



**WARNING:** Before operating the power decklid, be sure that no one, particularly a child, is in a position where he or she can be injured by the trunk lid. NEVER leave the remote entry transmitter where it can be inadvertently activated, as someone could be seriously injured by a moving decklid.




## Locks and Security

### **Anti-scan feature**

If the wrong code has been entered seven times (35 consecutive button presses), the keypad will go into an anti-scan mode. This mode disables the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp will flash.

The anti-scan feature will turn off after:

- one minute of keypad inactivity.
- pressing the  control on the remote entry transmitter.
- the ignition is turned to the on position.

### **SECURILOCK® PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM**

SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system is an engine immobilization system. This system is designed to help prevent the engine from being started unless a **coded key programmed to your vehicle** is used. The use of the wrong type of coded key may lead to a “no-start” condition.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### **Radio type approval numbers for Immobilizer System PATS XCVR**

If the type approval of your immobilizer system is inspected in one of the countries listed in the following table, refer to the corresponding approval number:

<b>Immobilizer System PATS XCVR certification numbers</b>	
<b>TX Frequency: 134,2 kHz</b>	<b>-8,1 dBµA/m @ 10 m</b>
<b>Country Name</b>	<b>Type Approval Number</b>
American Samoa (USA)	See USA
Bahrain	DLM/GEN/18/18/16
Barbados	340/3 Vol.II
Canada	CANADA: 3043104475A
China	CMII ID:2005DJ0428
Ghana	SPLS / -485 / 2001
Guam (USA)	See USA
Jordan	4/U/U/4250
Kenya	CCK/ES/100/0

## Locks and Security

Immobilizer System PATS XCVR certification numbers	
Kuwait	M.C/U.S.0 /5/7-12579
Mauritius	TA/2005/15
Mayotte (F)	CE 0682 0
Mexico	RLVVIVP03-324
Morocco	MR 1299 ANRT 2004
Netherlands Antilles (NL)	CE 0682 0
Nicaragua	NCG-CE-04-004
Northern Mariana Islands	See USA
Oman	OMA/1265(A) 1308/2001
Puerto Rico	See USA
Qatar	QTEL/SR/2003/R-276
Saudi Arabia	(10/1900)
South Korea	R-LPD1-04-0145
Tunisia	269/MAT/2004
United Arab Emirates	5/10-2/3274/3774
Uruguay	025/FR/2003
USA	NT8-15607PAT3XCVR
Zambia	CAZ/ENG/CA/2005/02/8

**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

Your vehicle comes with three coded keys; additional coded keys may be purchased from your authorized dealer. The authorized dealer can program your spare keys to your vehicle or you can program the keys yourself. Refer to *Programming spare keys* for instructions on how to program the coded key.

**Note:** The SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.

## Locks and Security

**Note:** Large metallic objects, electronic devices that are used to purchase gasoline or similar items, or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting issues. You need to prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting the engine. These objects will not cause damage to the coded key, but may cause a momentary issue if they are too close to the key when starting the engine. If a problem occurs, turn the ignition off, remove all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart the engine.

**Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.**

### Anti-theft indicator

The anti-theft indicator is located on top of the instrument panel.

- When the ignition is in the off position, the indicator will flash once every two seconds to indicate the SecuriLock® system is functioning as a theft deterrent.
- When the ignition is in the on position, the indicator will glow for three seconds to indicate normal system functionality.

If a problem occurs with the SecuriLock® system, the indicator will flash rapidly or glow steadily when the ignition is in the on position. If this occurs, turn the ignition off then back to on to make sure there was no electronic interference with the programmed key. If the vehicle doesn't start, try to start it with the 2nd programmed key and if successful contact your authorized dealership for key replacement. If the indicator still flashes rapidly or glows steadily, the vehicle will not start, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for service.

### Automatic arming

The vehicle is armed immediately after switching the ignition to the off position.

The theft indicator will flash every two seconds when the vehicle is armed.

## Locks and Security

### Automatic disarming

Switching the ignition to the on position with a **coded key (programmed to your vehicle)** disarms the vehicle and allows the engine to start. The indicator on the instrument panel will illuminate for three seconds and then go out. If the indicator stays on for an extended period of time or flashes rapidly, have the system serviced by your authorized dealer or a qualified technician.

### Replacement keys

If your keys are lost or stolen and you don't have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. The key codes need to be erased from your vehicle and new coded keys will need to be programmed.

Replacing coded keys can be very costly. Store an extra programmed key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. Please visit an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

### Programming spare keys

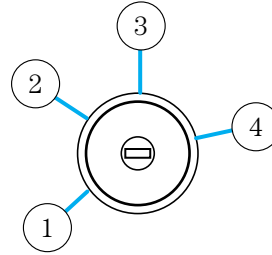
You can program your own coded keys to your vehicle. Please read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

#### Tips:

- A maximum of eight keys can be coded to your vehicle.
- Only use SecuriLock® keys.
- You must have two previously programmed coded keys (keys that already operate your vehicle's engine) and the new unprogrammed key(s) readily accessible.
- If no previously programmed coded keys are available, you must take your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the spare key(s) programmed.

## Locks and Security

1. Insert a previously programmed coded key into the ignition.
2. Turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position. Keep the ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least one second, but no more than 10 seconds.
3. Turn the ignition to the 1 (off) position, and remove the coded key from the ignition.
4. After three seconds but within ten seconds of removing the previously programmed coded key, insert the other previously programmed coded key into the ignition.
5. Turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position. Keep the ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least one second but not more than 10 seconds.
6. Turn the ignition to the 1 (off) position, and remove the second key from the ignition.
7. Within twenty seconds of removing the previously programmed coded key, insert the unprogrammed key (new/valet key) into the ignition.
8. Turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position. Keep the ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least one second.
9. Your new unprogrammed key is now programmed.



If the key has been successfully programmed it will start the vehicle's engine and the theft indicator light will illuminate for three seconds and then go out. If the key was not successfully programmed, it will not start your vehicle's engine and the theft indicator light will flash on and off rapidly. If failure repeats, bring your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the new key(s) programmed.

To program additional new unprogrammed key(s), repeat this procedure from Step 1 for each additional key.

### PERIMETER ALARM SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The perimeter anti-theft system will warn you in the event of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

If there is any potential perimeter anti-theft problem with your vehicle, ensure **ALL remote entry transmitters** are taken to the authorized dealer to aid in troubleshooting.


## Locks and Security

### Arming the system

When armed, the perimeter alarm will notify you of an unauthorized entry. When unauthorized entry occurs, the system will flash the park lamps and will sound the horn.

The system is ready to arm whenever the key is out of the ignition. Any of the following actions will arm the alarm system:

- Press the remote transmitter lock control one time to arm the system.
- Lock all doors using the keypad.
- Lock all doors using the interior power lock switch while the driver or passenger door is open and then closed.
- Lock all doors with the key in the key lock cylinder.

If all the closures (doors, trunk, hood) are closed, the park lamps will flash once and the horn will chirp once when the  on the remote entry transmitter is pressed a second time within five seconds.

If any closure is not properly closed, the park lamps will not flash and the horn will chirp twice.

The system will wait 20 seconds after one of the above actions is performed before allowing the alarm to be armed. After the 20-second pre-arm phase, the interior trim remote trunk release control and the interior trim power door unlock control are disabled, in order to further protect your vehicle.

### Disarming the system


You can disarm the system by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors by using the remote entry transmitter.
- Unlock the doors using a valid code on the keypad.
- Unlock the doors with the key in the key lock cylinder.
- Turn the ignition to the on position.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

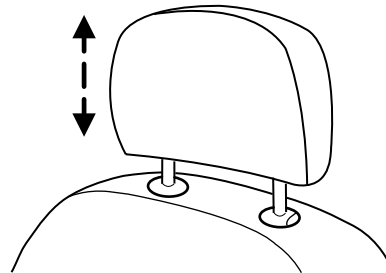
### SEATING

#### Adjustable head restraints

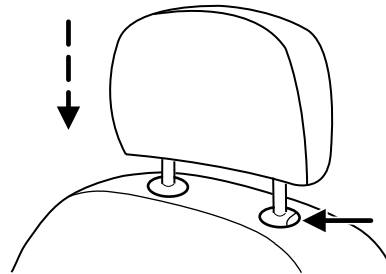
 **WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and/or operate the vehicle, until the head restraint is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.

Your vehicle's seats are equipped with head restraints which are vertically adjustable. The purpose of these head restraints is to help limit head motion in the event of a rear collision. To properly adjust your head restraints, lift the head restraint so that it is located directly behind your head or as close to that position as possible. Refer to the following to raise and lower the head restraints.

The head restraints can be moved up and down.



Push control to lower head restraint.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Using the manual recline function (if equipped)



**WARNING:** Never adjust the driver's seat or seatback when the vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to avoid injuring people in a collision or sudden stop.



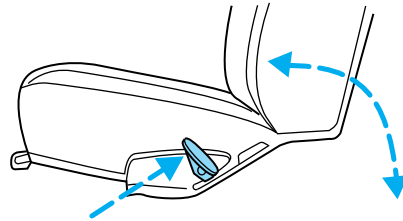
**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



**WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

To adjust the front seatback using the manual recliner:

- Lift and hold the handle located on the side of the seat.
- Lean against the seatback to adjust it to your desired position. You can recline the seat back or bring it forward.
- Release the handle when the desired position has been reached.

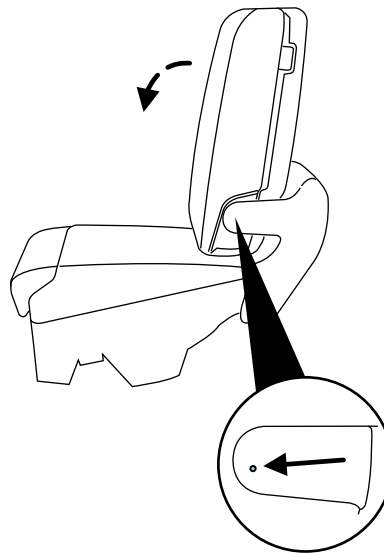




## Seating and Safety Restraints

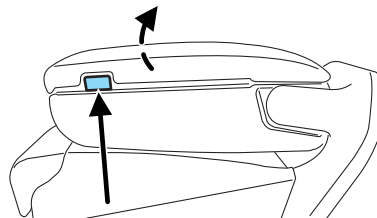
### Front seat armrest

The front seat armrest has a locking pin which prevents the armrest from folding down during a collision. If the locking pin has engaged because of a substantial jolt, but no collision has occurred, you can disengage the locking pin by first moving the armrest forward until it stops to align the hole with the locking pin, then by pushing a small tool through the access hole provided.



**WARNING:** Ford Motor Company recommends that all front seat armrests should be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision to verify that the locking pin feature has not been damaged. The front seat armrest must be replaced if either damage or improper operation is found. Failure to replace a damaged front seat armrest may result in the armrest falling suddenly during a collision, which could lead to serious injury.

To gain access to the storage compartment in your armrest, press the button, on either the driver or passenger side, to unlatch and open the lid.



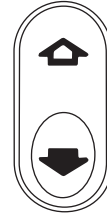
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Using the power lumbar support (if equipped)

The power lumbar control is located on the front inboard side of the seat.

Press the top side of the control to adjust firmness.

Press the bottom side of the control to adjust softness.



### Adjusting the power front seats

The controls for the power seats are located on the inside of each front door.



**WARNING:** Never adjust the driver's seat or seatback when the vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to avoid injuring people in a collision or sudden stop.



**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.




**WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

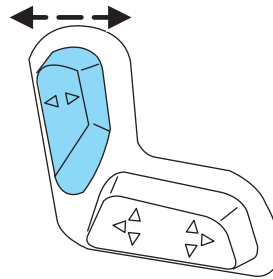


**WARNING:** Sitting improperly out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash. Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.

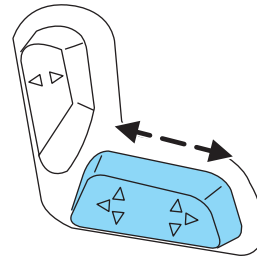
## Seating and Safety Restraints

 **WARNING:** To reduce the risk of possible serious injury: Do not hang objects off seat back or stow objects in map pocket (if equipped) when a child is in the front passenger seat. Do not place objects underneath the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console (if equipped). Check Passenger Airbag Disable Indicator for proper airbag status. Refer to *Front passenger sensing system* in the *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* chapter for additional details. Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system.

Press the control to recline the seatback forward or backward.

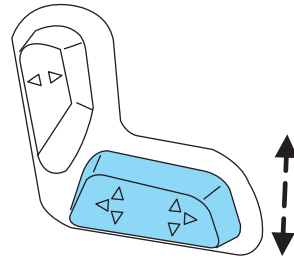


Press to move the seat forward or backward.

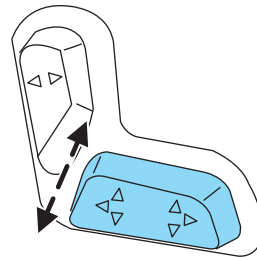


## Seating and Safety Restraints

Press to move the front portion of the seat cushion up or down.



Press to move the rear portion of the seat cushion up or down.



### Heated seats (if equipped)



**WARNING:** Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

**Note:** Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

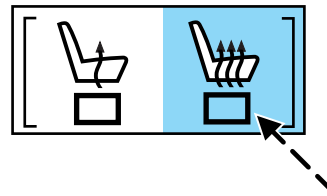
The heated seat control is located on the driver's or front passenger's door.

100

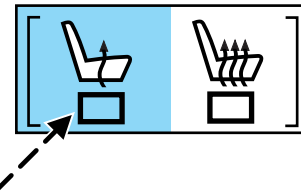
## Seating and Safety Restraints

To operate the heated seats:

- Press the indicated side of the control for maximum heat.
- Press again to deactivate.



- Press the indicated side of the control for minimum heat.
- Press again to deactivate.



The heated seat module resets at every ignition run cycle. While the ignition is in the on position, activating the high or low heated seat switch enables heating mode. When activated, they will turn off automatically when the ignition is turned to the off position.

The indicator light will illuminate when the heated seats have been activated.

### **Rear heated seats (if equipped)**



**WARNING:** Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

**Note:** Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

The rear seat heat controls are located on the rear door panels and operate like the front heated seats. Refer to the *Heated Seats* section in this chapter.

### Easy-access/easy-out feature (if equipped)

This feature automatically moves the driver's seat rearward 2 in (5 cm) when:

- the transmission is in N (Neutral) or P (Park)
- the key is removed from the ignition

The seat will move forward (to the original position) when:

- the transmission is in N (Neutral) or P (Park)
- the key is placed in the ignition

### Seat-mounted cup holders (if equipped)

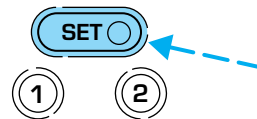
Your vehicle may be equipped with cupholders in the cushion of the front center seat and the rear seat. The rear seat cupholder is designed to over rotate from the seat when subjected to a heavy load. The rear seat cupholder can be reset by rotating to the closed position.



**WARNING:** Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard objects can injure you in a collision.

### Memory seats/outside rear view mirrors/adjustable pedals (if equipped)

This system allows automatic positioning of the driver seat, adjustable pedals, and outside rear view mirrors to two programmable positions.




The memory seat control is located on the driver door.

- To program position one, move the driver seat to the desired position using the seat controls. Press the SET control. The SET control indicator light will briefly illuminate. While the light is illuminated, press control 1.
- To program position two, repeat the previous procedure using control 2.

A position can only be recalled when the transmission gearshift is in Park. A memory seat position may be programmed at any time.

102

## Seating and Safety Restraints

The memory seat positions are also recalled when you press your remote entry transmitter  (unlock) control.

To program the memory seat to remote entry transmitter, refer to *Remote entry system* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

### SAFETY RESTRAINTS

#### Personal Safety System®

The Personal Safety System® provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

Your vehicle's Personal Safety System® consists of the following items:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints
- Front safety belts with pretensioners, energy management retractors, and safety belt usage sensors
- Driver's seat position sensor
- Front passenger sensing system
- "Passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp
- Front crash severity sensor
- Restraints Control Module (RCM) with impact and safing sensors
- Restraint system warning light and back-up tone
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, and indicator lights

#### **How does the Personal Safety System® work?**

The Personal Safety System® can adapt the deployment strategy of your vehicle's safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the Restraints control module (RCM). During a crash, the RCM may activate the safety belt pretensioners and/or either one or both stages of the dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

The fact that the pretensioners or airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with

## Seating and Safety Restraints

the system. Rather, it means the Personal Safety System® determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage, etc.) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices. Front airbags are designed to activate only in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollovers, side-impacts, or rear-impacts unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

### ***Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints***

The dual-stage airbags offer the capability to tailor the level of airbag inflation energy. A lower, less forceful energy level is provided for more common, moderate-severity impacts. A higher energy level is used for the most severe impacts. Refer to *Airbag supplemental restraints (SRS)* section in this chapter.

### ***Front crash severity sensor***

The front crash severity sensor enhances the ability to detect the severity of an impact. Positioned up front, it provides valuable information early in the crash event on the severity of the impact. This allows your Personal Safety System® to distinguish between different levels of crash severity and modify the deployment strategy of the dual-stage airbags and safety belt pretensioners.

### ***Driver's seat position sensor***

The driver's seat position sensor allows your Personal Safety System® to tailor the deployment level of the driver dual-stage airbag based on seat position. The system is designed to help protect smaller drivers sitting close to the driver airbag by providing a lower airbag output level.

### ***Front passenger sensing system***

For airbags to do their job they must inflate with great force, and this force can pose a potentially deadly risk to occupants that are very close to the airbag when it begins to inflate. For some occupants, like infants in rear-facing child seats, this occurs because they are initially sitting very close to the airbag. For other occupants, this occurs when the occupant is not properly restrained by safety belts or child safety seats and they move forward during pre-crash braking. The most effective way to reduce the risk of unnecessary injuries is to make sure all occupants are properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are much safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front.

104



## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** Air bags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. **NEVER** place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active air bag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.



**WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

The front passenger sensing system can automatically turn off the front passenger airbag and passenger seat-mounted side airbag. The system is designed to help protect small (child size) occupants from frontal airbag deployments when they are seated or restrained in the front passenger seat contrary to proper child-seating or restraint usage recommendations. Even with this technology, parents are **STRONGLY** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat. The sensor also turns off the passenger front airbag when the passenger seat is empty. The sensor turns off the passenger seat-mounted side airbag when the seat is empty and the safety belt is unbuckled.

When the front passenger seat is occupied and the sensing system has turned off the passenger's frontal airbag, the "pass airbag off" indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is off. See *Front passenger sensing system* in the *Airbag supplemental restraints (SRS)* section of this chapter.

### **Front safety belt usage sensors**

The front safety belt usage sensors detect whether or not the driver and front outboard passenger safety belts are fastened. This information allows your Personal Safety System® to tailor the airbag deployment and safety belt pretensioner activation depending upon safety belt usage.

### **Front safety belt pretensioners**

The safety belt pretensioners at the front outboard seating positions are designed to tighten the safety belts firmly against the occupant's body during frontal collisions and in side collisions. This helps increase the effectiveness of the safety belts. In frontal collisions, the safety belt pretensioners can be activated alone or, if the collision is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags.

### **Front safety belt energy management retractors**

The front outboard safety belt energy management retractors allow webbing to be pulled out of the retractor in a gradual and controlled

## Seating and Safety Restraints

manner in response to the occupant's forward momentum. This helps reduce the risk of force-related injuries to the occupant's chest by limiting the load on the occupant. Refer to *Energy management feature* section in this chapter.

### **Determining if the Personal Safety System® is operational**

The Personal Safety System® uses a warning light in the instrument cluster or a back-up tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to the *Warning light and chimes* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the Personal Safety System® is not required.

The Restraints control module (RCM) monitors its own internal circuits and the circuits for the airbag supplemental restraints, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt buckle sensors, front passenger sensing system, and the driver seat position sensor. In addition, the RCM also monitors the restraints warning light in the instrument cluster. A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following.

- The warning light will either flash or stay lit.
- The warning light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and warning light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the Personal Safety System® serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

### **Safety restraints precautions**



**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.





**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit in a rear seating position where they can be properly restrained.





**WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.


## Seating and Safety Restraints


 **WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.


 **WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

 **WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.

 **WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

 **WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

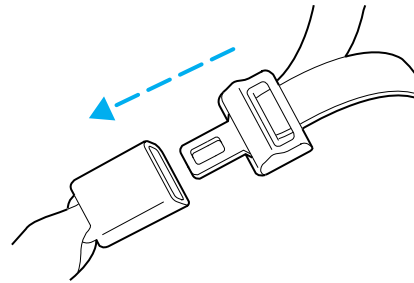
 **WARNING:** Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

 **WARNING:** Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.

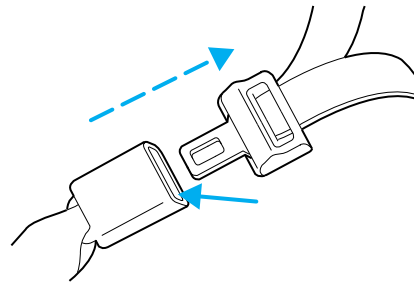
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Combination lap and shoulder belts

1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.



2. To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.



### Energy management feature

- This vehicle has a safety belt system with an energy management feature at the front outboard seating positions to help further reduce the risk of injury in the event of a head-on collision.
- The energy management feature is designed to pay out webbing in a controlled manner. This feature is designed to help reduce the belt force acting on the occupant's chest.

### Lap belts

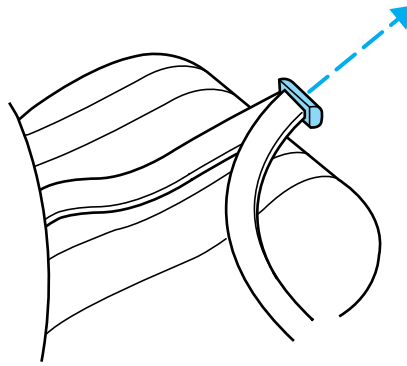
#### Adjusting the front center seat lap belt (if equipped)



**WARNING:** The lap belt should fit snugly and as low as possible around the hips, not across the waist.

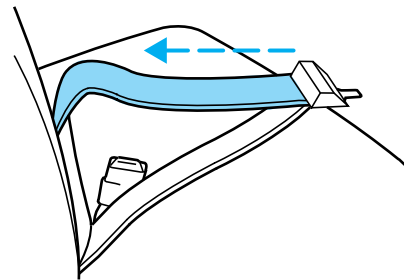
## Seating and Safety Restraints

The lap belt does not adjust automatically. Insert the tongue into the correct buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from). To lengthen the belt, turn the tongue at a right angle to the belt and pull across your lap until it reaches the buckle. To tighten the belt, pull the loose end of the belt through the tongue until it fits snugly across the hips.



Shorten and fasten the belt when not in use.

The front outboard and rear safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The front outboard passenger and rear seat safety belts have three types of locking modes described as follows:



### **Vehicle sensitive mode**

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

### **Webbing extraction sensitive mode**

The webbing sensitive locking mode locks the webbing and prevents more belt from being pulled out if the belt is pulled out too quickly. The belt will unlock when you stop pulling on it.

### **Automatic locking mode**

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

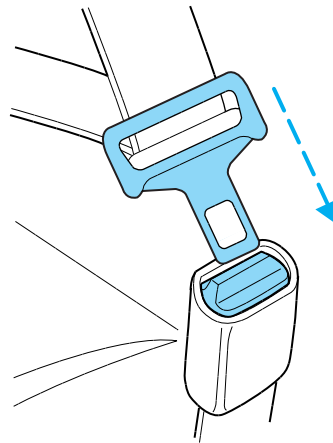
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### **When to use the automatic locking mode**

This mode should be used **any time** a child safety seat (except a booster) is installed in the vehicle. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible. Refer to *Safety restraints for children* or *Safety seats for children* later in this chapter.

### **How to use the automatic locking mode**

- Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.



- Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.



- Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### **How to disengage the automatic locking mode**

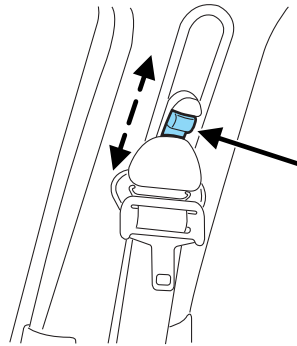
**!** **WARNING:** Ford Motor Company recommends that all passenger safety belt assemblies and attaching hardware should be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision to verify that the "automatic locking retractor" feature for child seats is still working properly. Safety belt assemblies should be inspected by an authorized dealer and must be replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in a collision.

Unbuckle the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

### **Front safety belt height adjustment**

Your vehicle has safety belt height adjustments for the driver and front outboard passenger. Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.

To lower the shoulder belt height, press the button and slide the height adjuster down. To raise the height of the shoulder belt, press the button and slide the height adjuster up. Pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.



**!** **WARNING:** Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.

### **Safety belt extension assembly**

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, there is an 8 inch (20 cm) safety belt extension assembly that can be added (part number 611C22). This assembly can be obtained from an authorized dealer.

111

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is located at the end of the webbing on the label. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.



**WARNING:** Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

### Safety belt warning light and indicator chime

The safety belt warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster and a chime sounds to remind the occupants to fasten their safety belts.

#### Conditions of operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

#### Belt-Minder®

The Belt-Minder® feature is a supplemental warning to the safety belt warning function. This feature provides additional reminders by intermittently sounding a chime and illuminating the safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster when the driver's and front passenger's safety belt is unbuckled.

The Belt-Minder® feature uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid activating the Belt-Minder® feature for objects placed in the front passenger seat, warnings will only be given to large front seat occupants as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

112



## Seating and Safety Restraints

Both the driver's and passenger's safety belt usages are monitored and either may activate the Belt-Minder® feature. The warnings are the same for the driver and the front passenger. If the Belt-Minder® warnings have expired (warnings for approximately five minutes) for one occupant (driver or front passenger), the other occupant can still activate the Belt-Minder® feature.

If...	Then...
The driver's and front passenger's safety belts are buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position or less than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder® feature will not activate.
The driver's or front passenger's safety belt is not buckled when the vehicle has reached at least 3 mph (5 km/h) and 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.
The driver's or front passenger's safety belt becomes unbuckled for approximately one minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 3 mph (5 km/h) and more than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

The following are reasons most often given for not wearing safety belts  
(All statistics based on U.S. data):

Reasons given...	Consider..
“Crashes are rare events”	<b>36700 crashes occur every day.</b> The more we drive, the more we are exposed to “rare” events, even for good drivers. <i>1 in 4 of us will be seriously injured in a crash during our lifetime.</i>
“I’m not going far”	<b>3 of 4</b> fatal crashes occur within <b>25 miles</b> (40 km) of home.
“Belts are uncomfortable”	We design our safety belts to enhance comfort. If you are uncomfortable - try different positions for the safety belt upper anchorage and seatback which should be as upright as possible; this can improve comfort.
“I was in a hurry”	<b>Prime time for an accident.</b> Belt-Minder® reminds us to take a few seconds to buckle up.
“Safety belts don’t work”	<b>Safety belts</b> , when used properly, <b>reduce risk of death</b> to front seat occupants by <b>45% in cars</b> , and by <b>60% in light trucks</b> .
“Traffic is light”	<b>Nearly 1 of 2 deaths occur in single-vehicle crashes</b> , many when no other vehicles are around.
“Belts wrinkle my clothes”	Possibly, but a serious crash can do much more than wrinkle your clothes, particularly if you are unbelted.
“The people I’m with don’t wear belts”	Set the example, teen deaths occur 4 times more often in vehicles with TWO or MORE people. Children and younger brothers/sisters imitate behavior they see.
“I have an airbag”	Airbags offer greater protection when used with safety belts. Frontal airbags are not designed to inflate in rear and side crashes or rollovers.
“I’d rather be thrown clear”	Not a good idea. <b>People</b> who are <b>ejected are 40 times more likely to DIE</b> . Safety belts help prevent ejection, WE CAN’T “PICK OUR CRASH”.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** Do not sit on top of a buckled safety belt or insert a latchplate into the buckle to avoid the Belt-Minder® chime. To do so may adversely affect the performance of the vehicle's airbag system.

### ***One-time disable***

If at any time the driver/front passenger quickly buckles then unbuckles the safety belt for that seating position, the Belt-Minder® is disabled for the current ignition cycle. The Belt-Minder® feature will enable during the same ignition cycle if the occupant buckles and remains buckled for approximately 30 seconds. Confirmation is not given for the one-time disable.

### ***Deactivating/activating the Belt-Minder® feature***

**The driver and front passenger Belt-Minder® are deactivated/activated independently. When deactivating/activating one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.**

*Read Steps 1 - 4 thoroughly before proceeding with the deactivation/activation programming procedure.*

**Note:** The driver and front passenger Belt-Minder® features must be disabled/enabled separately. Both cannot be disabled/enabled during the same key cycle.

The driver and front passenger Belt-Minder® features can be deactivated/activated by performing the following procedure:

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set.
- The gearshift is in P (Park).
- The ignition switch is in the off position.
- The driver and front passenger safety belts are unbuckled.

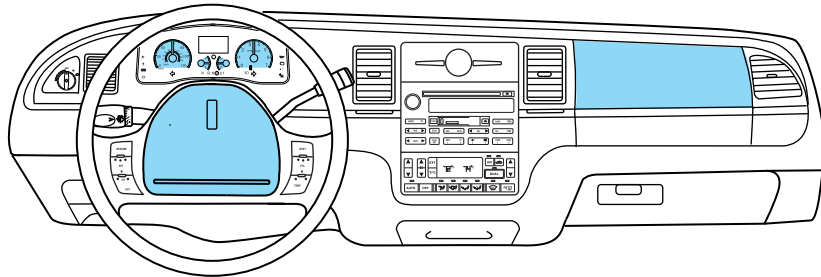


**WARNING:** While the design allows you to deactivate your Belt-Minder®, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the Belt-Minder® system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle. To reduce the risk of injury, do not deactivate/activate the Belt-Minder® feature while driving the vehicle.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

1. Turn the ignition switch to the on position. **DO NOT START THE ENGINE.**
2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off (Approximately one minute).
  - Step 3 must be completed within 50 seconds after the safety belt warning light turns off.
3. For the seating position being disabled, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt nine times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state. Step 3 must be completed within 50 seconds after the safety belt warning light turns off.
  - After Step 3, the restraint system warning light (airbag light) will be turned on for three seconds.
4. Within approximately seven seconds of the light turning off, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt.
  - This will disable the Belt-Minder® feature for that seating position if it is currently enabled. As confirmation, the restraint system warning light will flash four times per second for three seconds.
  - This will enable the Belt-Minder® feature for that seating position if it is currently disabled. As confirmation, the restraint system warning light will flash four times per second for three seconds, followed by three seconds with the light off, then followed by the restraint system warning light flashing four times per second for three seconds again.

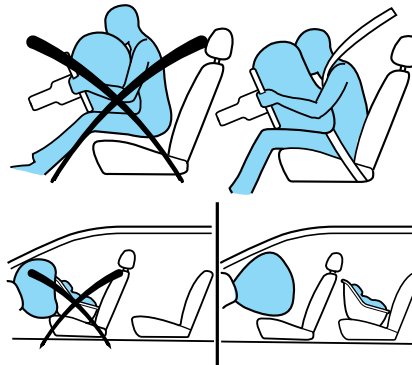
### AIRBAG SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)



## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Important SRS precautions

The SRS is designed to work with the safety belt to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags DO NOT inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.



**!** **WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.


**!** **WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

**!** **WARNING:** The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

**!** **WARNING:** Never place your arm over the air bag module as a deploying air bag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.


**!** **WARNING:** Ford Motor Company recommends that an authorized dealer inspect all steering column assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a collision. Failure to inspect and if necessary replace the steering column assembly could result in severe injury or death in the event of a collision.


## Seating and Safety Restraints


 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the steering column, its adaptive module, or its fuses. See your authorized dealer.


To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly one or two degrees from the upright position.

 **WARNING:** Do not put anything on or over the air bag module. Placing objects on or over the air bag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the air bag into your face and torso causing serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses. See your authorized dealer.

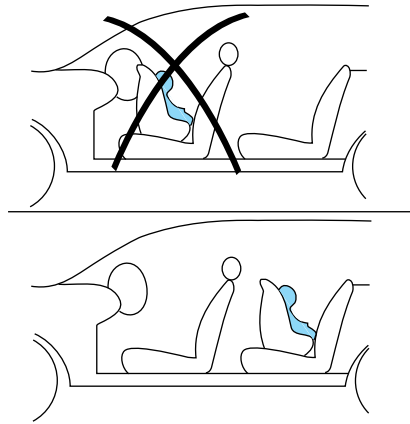
 **WARNING:** The front passenger airbag is not designed to offer protection to an occupant in the center front seating position.


 **WARNING:** Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.


## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Children and airbags

Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a collision.



 **WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. **NEVER** place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.

 **WARNING:** Front seating positions only: If seating two adults and a child, Ford recommends properly restraining the child in the center front seating position, but only if doing so will not interfere with driving the vehicle. This arrangement provides lap and shoulder belt and airbag protection for adult occupants and an attachment method for a child restraint. If the child seat interferes with driving the vehicle and the child restraint is forward-facing, the child may be restrained in the passenger seat. Move the seat as far rearward as possible to minimize the likelihood of interaction with the front passenger airbag. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their safety belts. Ensure the child is properly restrained in an appropriate child seat or with the use of a booster.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

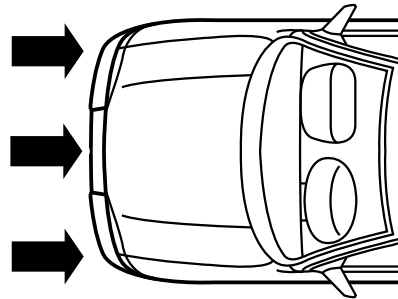
### How does the airbag supplemental restraint system work?

The airbag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains longitudinal deceleration sufficient to cause the sensors to close an electrical circuit that initiates airbag inflation.

The fact that the airbags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Driver and passenger airbags are designed to inflate in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollover, side-impact, or rear-impacts unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (e.g., baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions, swelling or temporary hearing loss. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.





## Seating and Safety Restraints

The SRS consists of the following items:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules (which include the inflators and airbags)
- safety belt pretensioners
- Front passenger sensing system
- “Passenger airbag off” or “pass airbag off” indicator lamp. Refer to *Front passenger sensing system* later in this chapter.
- Driver and passenger side airbags
- One or more impact and safing sensors
- A readiness light and tone
- A diagnostic module
- The electrical wiring which connects the components

The diagnostic module monitors its own internal circuits as well as the supplemental airbag electrical system wiring (including the impact sensors), the system wiring, the airbag system readiness light, the airbag back up power and the airbag ignitors.



**WARNING:** Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.



**WARNING:** If the air bag has deployed, **the air bag will not function again and must be replaced immediately.** If the air bag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.



**WARNING:** If the safety belt pretensioners deploy in an accident, they will not function again (belt will not extract or retract) and must be replaced immediately. Failure to replace the retractor assemblies will increase the risk of injury.

### **Front passenger sensing system**

The front passenger sensing system is designed to meet the regulatory requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 and is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag under certain conditions.

The front passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger's seat and safety belt. The sensors are designed to

121

## Seating and Safety Restraints

detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger's frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or disabled (will not inflate).

The front passenger sensing system will disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag if:

- the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or has small/medium objects in the front seat,
- the system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat that is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a forward-facing child restraint that is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat,
- a front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time,

When the passenger airbag off light is illuminated, the passenger side airbag may be disabled to avoid the risk of airbag deployment injuries.

The front passenger sensing system uses a "passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator which will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled. The indicator lamp is located on the instrument panel to the right of the radio.



**Note:** The indicator lamp will illuminate for a short period of time when the ignition is turned to the on position to confirm it is functional.

When the front passenger seat is not occupied (empty seat) or in the event that the front passenger frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate), the indicator lamp will be unlit.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag when a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the indicator lamp will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If the child restraint has been installed and the indicator lamp is not lit, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

122

## Seating and Safety Restraints

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the indicator will be unlit and stay unlit.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger's seat, but the "passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person isn't sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the indicator lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

Occupant	Pass Airbag Off Indicator Lamp	Passenger Airbag
Empty seat	Unlit	Disabled
Small child in child safety seat or booster	Lit	Disabled
Small child with safety belt buckled or unbuckled	Lit	Disabled
Adult	Unlit	Enabled



**WARNING:** Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it's very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** Sitting improperly out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash. Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.

The front passenger sensing system may detect small or medium objects placed on the seat cushion. For most objects that are in the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag will be disabled. Even though the passenger airbag is disabled, the "pass airbag off" lamp may or may not be illuminated according to the table below.

Objects	Pass Airbag Off Indicator Lamp	Passenger Airbag
Small (i.e. three-ring binder, small purse, bottled water)	Unlit	Disabled
Medium (i.e. heavy briefcase, fully packed luggage)	Lit	Disabled
Empty seat, or small to medium object with safety belt buckled	Lit	Disabled

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag off indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console (if equipped)
- Objects hanging off the seat back
- Objects stowed in the seatback map pocket (if equipped)
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.

124

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of possible serious injury:

Do not stow objects in seat back map pocket (if equipped) or hang objects off seat back if a child is in the front passenger seat. Do not place objects underneath the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console (if equipped). Check the “passenger airbag off” or “pass airbag off” indicator lamp for proper airbag Status. Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system.

In case there is a problem with the front passenger sensing system, the airbag readiness lamp in the instrument cluster will stay lit.



**If the airbag readiness lamp is lit, do the following:**

The driver and/or adult passengers should check for any objects that may be lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.

If objects are lodged and/or cargo is interfering with the seat; please take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

- Pull the vehicle over.
- Turn the vehicle off.
- Driver and/or adult passengers should check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
- Restart the vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness lamp is no longer illuminated
- If the airbag readiness lamp remains illuminated, this may or may/not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

DO NOT attempt to repair or service the system; take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.



**WARNING:** The front passenger airbag is not designed to offer protection to an occupant in the center seating position.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** An out of position front center occupant could affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center at the phone number shown in the *Customer Assistance* section of this *Owner's Guide*.



**WARNING:** Any alteration/modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system.

### Determining if the system is operational

The SRS uses a readiness light in the instrument cluster or a tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to *Airbag readiness* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and/or light are repaired.



If any of these things happen, even intermittently, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.


### Seat-mounted side airbag system





**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover on the side of the seatbacks of the front seats or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

 **WARNING:** Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

 **WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag SRS, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag SRS is provided.

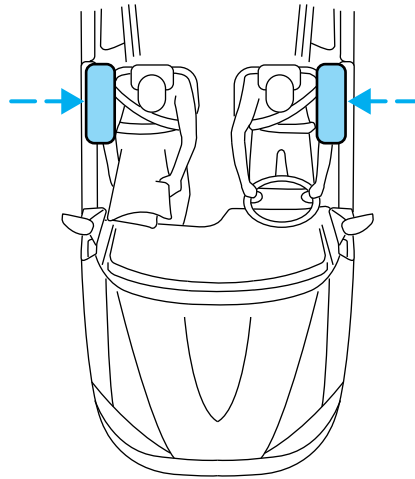
### ***How does the side airbag system work?***

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

The side airbag system consists of the following:

- An inflatable nylon bag (airbag) with a gas generator concealed behind the outboard bolster of the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- A special seat cover designed to allow airbag deployment.
- The same warning light, electronic control and diagnostic unit as used for the front airbags.
- Two crash sensors located near the side of the vehicle.

Side airbags, in combination with safety belts, can help reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of a significant side impact collision.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

The side airbags are fitted on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. In certain lateral collisions, the airbag on the side affected by the collision will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact collisions.

The airbag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains lateral deceleration sufficient to cause the sensors to close an electrical circuit that initiates airbag inflation.

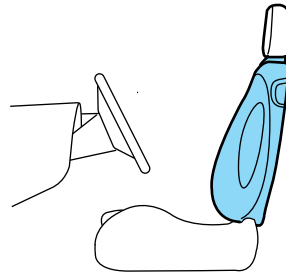
The fact that the airbags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Side airbags are designed to inflate in side-impact collisions, not roll-over, rear-impact, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration.



**WARNING:** Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.



**WARNING:** If the side airbag has deployed, **the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer.** If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.



### ***Determining if the system is operational***

The SRS uses a readiness light in the instrument cluster or a tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to *Airbag readiness* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the side airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light (same light as for front airbag system) will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.

128



## Seating and Safety Restraints

- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and/or light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the SRS serviced at your authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

### Disposal of airbags and airbag equipped vehicles (including pretensioners)

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags MUST BE disposed of by qualified personnel.

### SAFETY RESTRAINTS FOR CHILDREN

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children. Also see *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* in this chapter for special instructions about using airbags.

#### Important child restraint precautions



**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be purchased separately from the vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** All children are shaped differently. The Recommendations for Safety Restraints are based on probable child height, age and weight thresholds from NHTSA and other safety organizations or are the minimum requirements of law. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and consult your pediatrician to make sure your child seat is appropriate for your child, and is compatible with and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or on the internet at <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry of transportation, your local St. John Ambulance office at <http://www.sfa.ca>, or Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0371 (<http://www.tc.gc.ca>). Failure to properly restrain children in safety seats made especially for their height, age, and weight may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children		
	Child size, height, weight, or age	Recommended restraint type
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger)	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer)	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer)	Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seatback upright.

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the U.S. and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 ft 9 in (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children twelve (12) years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.

130

## Seating and Safety Restraints


### **Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children**


Restraint Type	Child Weight	Use any attachment method as indicated below by "X"				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)		X			X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child seat	Over 48 lb (21 kg)			X	X	





**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.


## Seating and Safety Restraints


 **WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by the vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, which may result in serious injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a collision.

 **WARNING:** Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children, unreliable adults, or pets unattended in your vehicle.

### Transporting children

Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their age, height and weight. All children are shaped differently. The child height, age and weight thresholds provided are recommendations or the minimum requirements of law. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) provides education and

## Seating and Safety Restraints

training to ensure that all children ages 0 to 16 are properly restrained in the correct restraint system. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and your pediatrician to make sure your seat is appropriate for your child and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at **1-888-327-4236** or on the internet at <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry of transportation, your local St. John Ambulance office at <http://www.sfa.ca>, or Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0371 (<http://www.tc.gc.ca>).

Follow all the safety restraint and airbag precautions that apply to adult passengers in your vehicle.

If the child is the proper height, age, and weight (as specified by your child safety seat or booster manufacturer), fits the restraint and can be restrained properly, then restrain the child in the child safety seat or with the belt-positioning booster. Remember that child seats and belt-positioning boosters vary and may be designed to fit children of different heights, ages and weights. Children who are too large for child safety seats or belt-positioning boosters (as specified by your child safety seat manufacturer) should always properly wear safety belts.

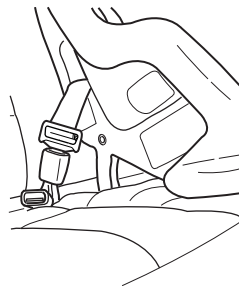
### SAFETY SEATS FOR CHILDREN

#### Infant and/or toddler seats

Use a safety seat that is recommended for the size and weight of the child.

When installing a child safety seat:

- Review and follow the information presented in the *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* section in this chapter.
- Carefully follow all of the manufacturer's instructions included with the safety seat you put in your vehicle. If you do not install and use the safety seat properly, the child may be injured in a sudden stop or collision.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back.

Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

### Installing child safety seats with combination lap and shoulder belts

Check to make sure the child seat is properly secured before each use. Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap/shoulder belts:

- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to help prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place vehicle seat back in upright position.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. Refer to step 5 below. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.



**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and/or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

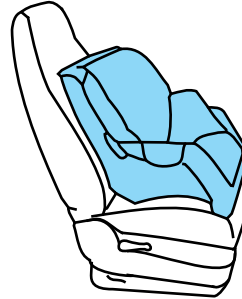
Perform the following steps when installing the child seat with combination lap/shoulder belts:

**Note:** Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.

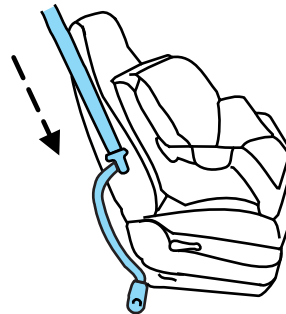
134

## Seating and Safety Restraints

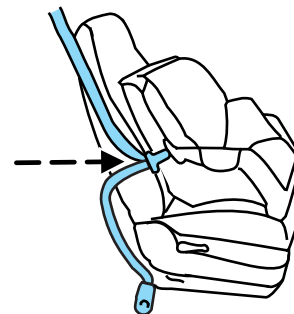
1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.

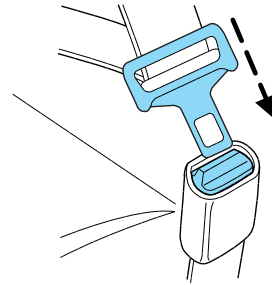


3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.

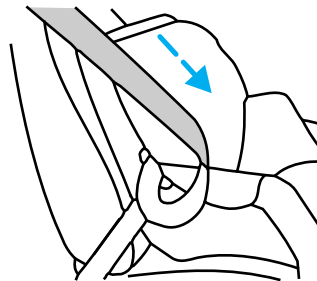


## Seating and Safety Restraints

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



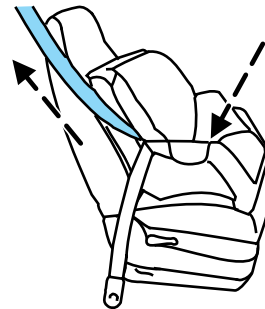
5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.



6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 5 and 6.

8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, e.g., by kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the additional weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to the vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean towards the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.



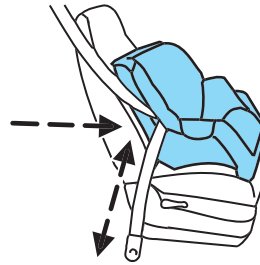
136



## Seating and Safety Restraints

9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped). Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.



11. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST.

### **Installing child safety seats in the lap belt seating positions**



**WARNING:** Installing a child safety seat in the front row lap seating position should be avoided if at all possible.



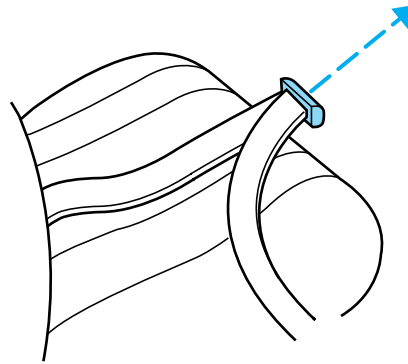
**WARNING:** Never place a rear-facing child seat in the front center seating position of a vehicle with rear seating positions.



**WARNING:** Front seating positions only: If seating two adults and a child, Ford recommends properly restraining the child in the center front seating position, but only if doing so will not interfere with driving the vehicle. This arrangement provides lap and shoulder belt and airbag protection for adult occupants and an attachment method for a child restraint. If the child seat interferes with driving the vehicle and the child restraint is forward-facing, the child may be restrained in the passenger seat. Move the seat as far rearward as possible to minimize the likelihood of interaction with the front passenger airbag. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their safety belts. Ensure the child is properly restrained in an appropriate child seat or with the use of a booster.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

1. Lengthen the lap belt. To lengthen the belt, hold the tongue so that its bottom is perpendicular to the direction of webbing while sliding the tongue up the webbing.



2. Place the child safety seat in the center seating position.
3. Route the tongue and webbing through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle for the center seating position until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened to the buckle by pulling on the tongue.
5. Push down on the child seat while pulling on the loose end of the lap belt webbing to tighten the belt.
6. Before placing the child into the child seat, forcibly tilt the child seat from side to side and in forward direction to make sure that the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than one inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.
7. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST.

**Note:** There is no top tether anchor for the front center seating position. See *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

### **Attaching child safety seats with LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) attachments**

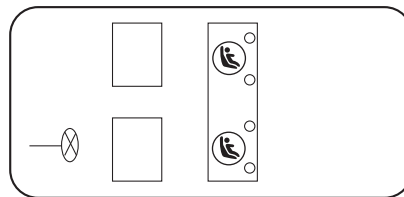
The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two (2) lower anchors located where the vehicle seat back and seat cushion meet (called the "seat bight") and one (1) top tether anchor located behind that seating position.

138

## Seating and Safety Restraints

LATCH compatible child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use safety belts to attach the child seat, however the safety belt can still be used to attach the child seat. For forward-facing child seats, the top tether strap must also be attached to the proper top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child seat. Ford Motor Company recommends the use of a child safety seat having a top tether strap. See *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* and *Recommendations for attaching safety restraints for children* in this chapter for more information.

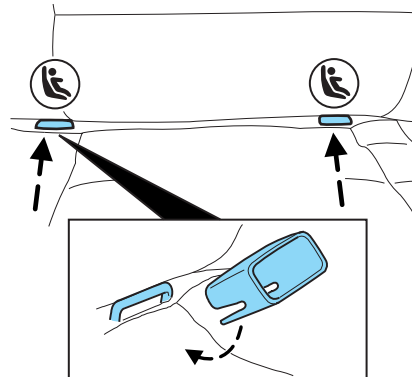
Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child seat installation at the seating positions marked with the child seat symbol.



The LATCH anchors are located at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seatback, below the locator symbols on the seat back. Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child seat with LATCH attachments.

Follow the instructions on attaching child safety seats with tether straps. Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child seat only to the anchors shown.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

Two plastic LATCH guides can be obtained at no charge from an authorized dealer. They snap onto the LATCH lower anchors in the seat to help attach a child seat with rigid attachments. The guides hold the seat trim away to expose the anchor and make it easier to attach some child seats.



**WARNING:** Never attach two child safety seats to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and/or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

### ***Use of inboard lower anchors from the outboard seating positions (center seating use)***

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 570 mm (22.4 inches) apart. The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 280 mm (11 inches) center to center. A child seat with rigid LATCH attachments cannot be installed at the center seating position. LATCH compatible child seats (with attachments on belt webbing) can only be used at this seating position provided that the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child seat to any lower anchor if an adjacent child seat is attached to that anchor.



**WARNING:** The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 280 mm (11 inches) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

If you install a child seat with rigid LATCH attachments, and have attached the top tether strap to the proper top tether anchor, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off the vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching the vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.

140

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child seat from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to the vehicle. The seat should move less than one inch when you do this for a proper installation.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

### **Combining safety belt and LATCH lower anchors for attaching child safety seats**

When used in combination, either the safety belt or the LATCH lower anchors may be attached first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child seat. Refer to *Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children* in this chapter.

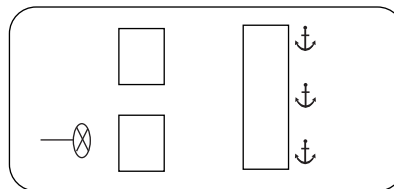
### **Attaching child safety seats with tether straps**

Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats. Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in the vehicle.

The rear seats of your vehicle are equipped with built-in tether strap anchors located behind the seats as described below.

The tether anchors in your vehicle are located under a cover marked with the tether anchor symbol (shown with title).

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):



Attach the tether strap only to the appropriate tether anchor as shown. The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.

Once the child safety seat has been installed, using either the safety belt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Perform the following steps to install a child safety seat to the tether anchor:

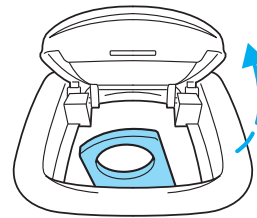
1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat.

For vehicles with adjustable head restraints, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts, otherwise route the tether strap over the top of the seatback.

2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.

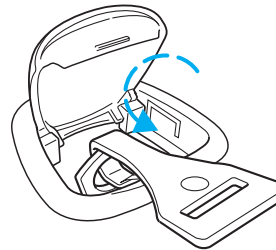


3. Open the tether anchor cover.



4. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.

If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a collision.



5. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a collision greatly increases.

If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, Ford also recommends its use.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Child booster seats

The belt-positioning booster (booster seat) is used to improve the fit of the vehicle safety belt. Children outgrow a typical child seat (e.g., convertible or toddler seat) when they weigh about 40 lb (18 kg) and are around four (4) years of age. Consult your child safety seat owner guide for the weight, height, and age limits specific to your child safety seat. Keep your child in the child safety seat if it properly fits the child, remains appropriate for their weight, height and age AND if properly secured to the vehicle.

Although the lap/shoulder belt will provide some protection, children who have outgrown a typical child seat are still too small for lap/shoulder belts to fit properly, and wearing an improperly fitted vehicle safety belt could increase the risk of serious injury in a crash. To improve the fit of both the lap and shoulder belt on children who have outgrown child safety seats, Ford Motor Company recommends use of a belt-positioning booster.

Booster seats position a child so that vehicle lap/shoulder safety belts fit better. They lift the child up so that the lap belt rests low across the hips and the knees bend comfortably at the edge of the cushion, while minimizing slouching. Booster seats may also make the shoulder belt fit better and more comfortably. Try to keep the belt near the middle of the shoulder and across the center of the chest. Moving the child closer (a few centimeters or inches) to the center of the vehicle, but remaining in the same seating position, may help provide a good shoulder belt fit.

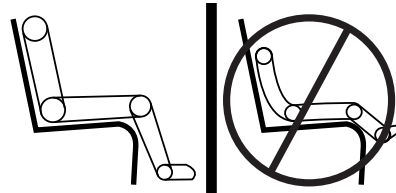
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### ***When children should use booster seats***

Children need to use booster seats from the time they outgrow the toddler seat until they are big enough for the vehicle seat and lap/shoulder belt to fit properly. Generally this is when they reach a height of at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall (around age eight to age twelve and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) or upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:

- Can the child sit all the way back against the vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?



- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?



## Seating and Safety Restraints

### **Types of booster seats**

There are generally two types of belt-positioning booster seats: backless and high back. Always use booster seats in conjunction with the vehicle lap/shoulder belt.

- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap/shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.



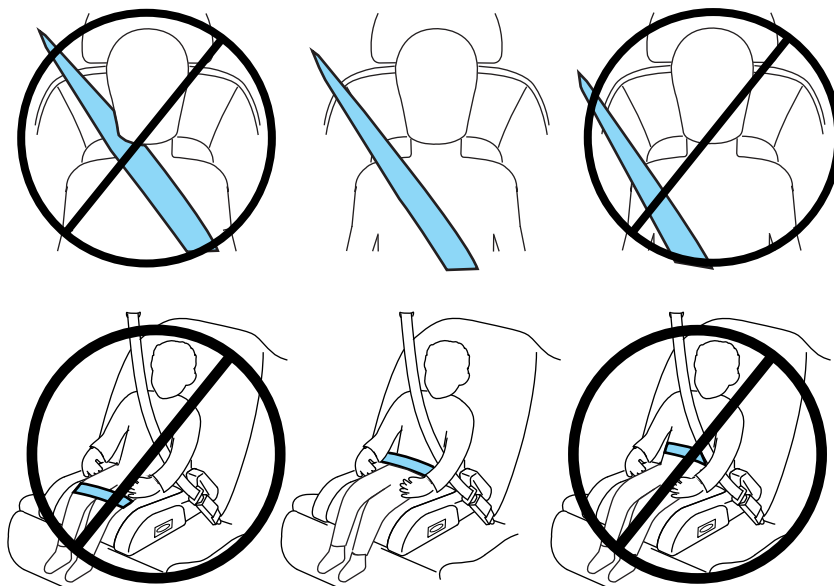
- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The drawings below compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings below also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

### ***The importance of shoulder belts***

Using a booster without a shoulder belt increases the risk of a child's head hitting a hard surface in a collision. For this reason, you should never use a booster seat with a lap belt only. It is generally best to use a booster seat with lap/shoulder belts in the back seat.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Move a child to a different seating location if the shoulder belt does not stay positioned on the shoulder during use.

Follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer of the booster seat.



**WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

### Child restraint and safety belt maintenance

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seatback (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a collision. Refer to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint. Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a collision be replaced. However, if the collision was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a collision should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

For proper care of soiled safety belts, refer to *Interior* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

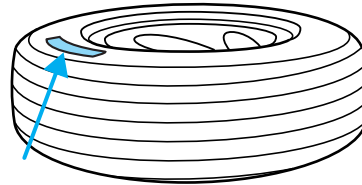


**WARNING:** Failure to inspect and if necessary replace the safety belt assembly or child restraint system under the above conditions could result in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### INFORMATION ABOUT UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADING

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:



- **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or "LT" type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104(c)(2).

**U.S. Department of Transportation-Tire quality grades:** The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

#### **Treadwear**

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

#### **Traction AA A B C**

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

148

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**WARNING:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

### Temperature A B C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.



**WARNING:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

### TIRES

Tires are designed to give many thousands of miles of service, but they must be maintained in order to get the maximum benefit from them.

#### Glossary of tire terminology

- **Tire label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.
- **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- **Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires].

149

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

- **kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- **PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- **Cold inflation pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 km).
- **Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

### INFLATING YOUR TIRES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

150

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or "blowout", with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

**Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure** is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (i.e. driven more than 1 mile [1.6 km]), never "bleed" or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

**Note:** If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.

3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

**Note:** If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.

4. Replace the valve cap.

5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

**Note:** Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T-type/mini-spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For Full Size and Dissimilar spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

### TIRE CARE

#### Inspecting your tires and wheel valve stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.



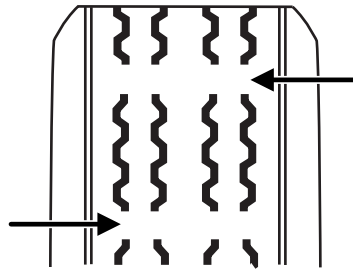
## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

### Tire wear

When the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or “wear bars”, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these “wear bars”, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.



### Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.



### **WARNING: Age**

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure, etc.) the tires experience throughout their lives. In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

### Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**WARNING:** When mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (138 kPa) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
3. Stand at a minimum of 12 ft. (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.
4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (138 kPa) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford Dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft. (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (if equipped).

If the TPMS indicator is flashing, your TPMS is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged (if equipped).

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Safety practices

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road
- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., **do not** rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

### Highway hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

### Tire and wheel alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front wheel drive (FWD) vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

156

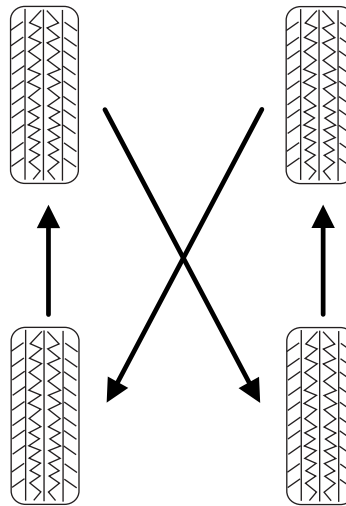
## Tires, Wheels and Loading

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

### Tire rotation

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the *scheduled maintenance information* that comes with your vehicle) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

- Rear Wheel Drive (RWD) vehicles/Four Wheel Drive (4WD)/All Wheel Drive (AWD) vehicles (front tires at top of diagram)



Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

**Note:** If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

**Note:** Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### INFORMATION CONTAINED ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

#### Information on “P” type tires

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

1. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

**Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).

2. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width.

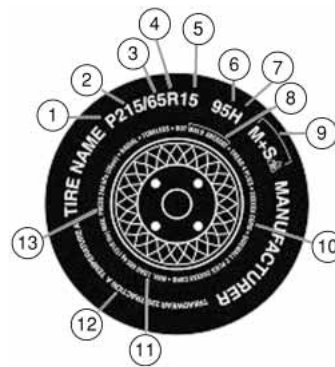
4. **R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

6. **95:** Indicates the tire’s load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your Owner’s Guide. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

158



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

7. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating - mph (km/h)
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

**Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

8. **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

9. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

**AT:** All Terrain, or

**AS:** All Season.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

10. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

11. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label, which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door, for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

### 12. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades

- **Treadwear:** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
- **Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
- **Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

13. **Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Additional information contained on the tire sidewall for “LT” type tires

“LT” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below.

**Note:** Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

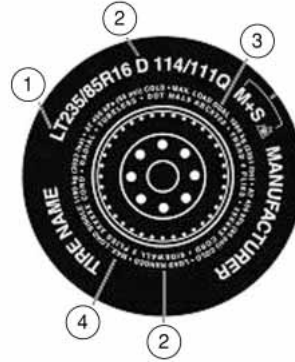
1. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for service on light trucks.

#### 2. Load Range/Load Inflation

**Limits:** Indicates the tire’s load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

3. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual; defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

4. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single; defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Information on “T” type tires

“T” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below:

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

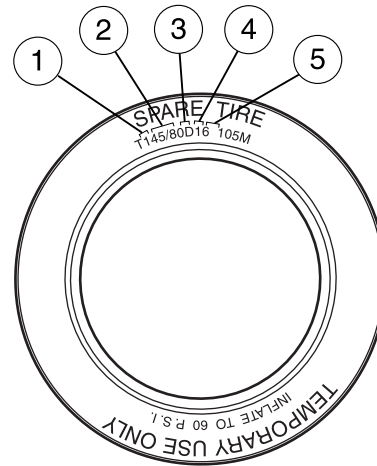
1. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for temporary service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

2. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

4. **D:** Indicates a “diagonal” type tire.  
**R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.



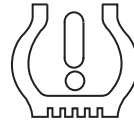
### Location of the tire label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door. Refer to the payload description and graphic in the *Vehicle loading — with and without a trailer* section.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)



As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

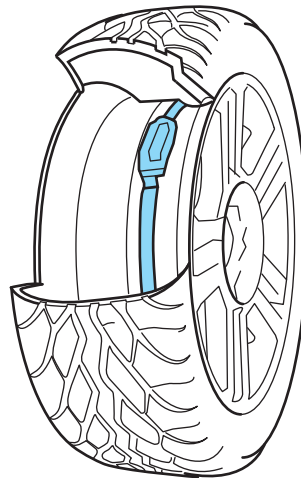


**WARNING:** The Tire Pressure Monitoring System is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

### Changing tires with TPMS

**Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor fastened to the inside rim of the wheel. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. The pressure sensor is located opposite (180 degrees) from the valve stem. Care must be taken when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor. It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.**

The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge, refer to *Inflating your tires* in this chapter.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### **Understanding your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)**

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The Low Tire Warning Lamp will turn ON if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns ON and a short time later turns OFF, your tire pressure still needs to be checked. Visit [www.checkmytires.org](http://www.checkmytires.org) for additional information.

### ***When your temporary spare tire is installed***

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the TPMS system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel/tire needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle. This includes the optional full-sized matching spare wheel and tire, as it is intended for temporary use only.

To restore the full functionality of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System, have the damaged road wheel/tire repaired and remounted on your vehicle. For additional information, refer to *Changing tires with TPMS* in this section.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### ***When you believe your system is not operating properly***

The main function of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. Please refer to the following chart for information concerning your Tire Pressure Monitoring System:

<b>Low Tire Pressure Warning Light</b>	<b>Possible cause</b>	<b>Customer Action Required</b>
Solid Warning Light	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Check your tire pressure to ensure tires are properly inflated; refer to <i>Inflating your tires</i> in this chapter. 2. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light will turn OFF.
	Spare tire in use	Your temporary spare tire is in use. (This includes the optional full-sized matching wheel and tire). Repair the damaged road wheel/tire and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to <i>When your temporary spare tire is installed</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If your tires are properly inflated and your spare tire is not in use and the light remains ON, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Low Tire Pressure Warning Light	Possible cause	Customer Action Required
Flashing Warning Light	Spare tire in use	Your temporary spare tire is in use. (This includes the optional full-sized matching wheel and tire). Repair the damaged road wheel and re-mount it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description of how the system functions under these conditions, refer to <i>When your temporary spare tire is installed</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If your tires are properly inflated and your spare tire is not in use and the TPMS warning light still flashes, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

### **When inflating your tires**

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the Tire Pressure Monitoring System may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn OFF after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

### **How temperature affects your tire pressure**

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase approximately 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary over night with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease approximately 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30° F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the TPMS as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the TPMS warning for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is ON, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. (If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.) Check air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

167

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### SNOW TIRES AND CHAINS



**WARNING:** Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure.

The tires on your vehicle have all weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and chains. If you need to use chains, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specifications) be used, as chains may chip aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- Use only cable type chains offered by Ford Motor Company as an accessory or equivalent. Using SAE class S or other conventional link type chains may cause damage to the vehicle's wheel house and/or body.
- Install chains securely, verifying that the chains do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the chains rub or bang against your vehicle, stop and re-tighten the chains. If this does not work, remove the chains to prevent damage to your vehicle.
- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Remove the tire chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire chains on dry roads.
- The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.
- Do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h) with tire cables on your vehicle.

### VEHICLE LOADING – WITH AND WITHOUT A TRAILER

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading

168

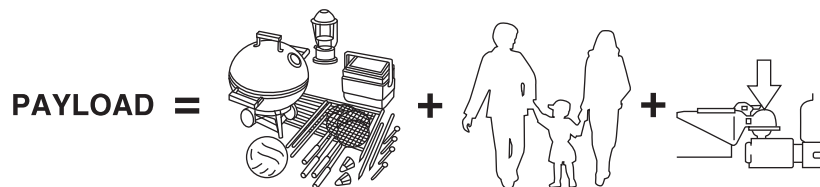


## Tires, Wheels and Loading

your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

**Base Curb Weight** – is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

**Vehicle Curb Weight** – is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.



**Payload** – is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **“THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb.”** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.



**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Example only:

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION				
SEATING CAPACITY		TOTAL 5	FRONT 2	REAR 3
The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed : XXX kg or XXX lbs.				
TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION	
FRONT	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI		
REAR	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI		
SPARE	T145/80D16 P225/60R17	420 KPA, 60 PSI 200 KPA, 29 PSI		

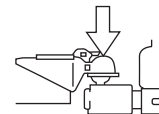
TIRE AND LOAD INFORMATION				
RENSEIGNEMENTS RELATIFS AUX PNEUS ET À LA CHARGE				
SEATING CAPACITY		TOTAL XX	FRONT XX	REAR X
NOMBRE DE PLACES		TOTAL	AVANT	ARRIÈRE
The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed , XXX kg. La charge du véhicule (occupants et bagages) ne doit jamais dépasser : XXX lbs.				
TIRE PNEUS	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION À FROID	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION CONSULTER LE GUIDE DU PROPRIÉTAIRE POUR DE PLUS AMPLES RENSEIGNEMENTS	
FRONT/ AVANT	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI		
REAR/ ARRIÈRE	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI		
SPARE/ PNEU DE SECOURS	T145/80D16 P225/60R17	420 KPA, 60 PSI 200 KPA, 29 PSI		

CARGO =

=



+



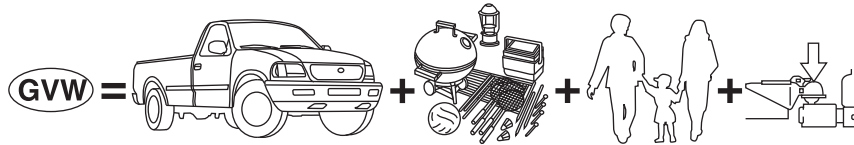
**Cargo Weight** – includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load weight is also part of cargo weight.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

**GAW (Gross Axle Weight)** – is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) – including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

**GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). **These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.**

**Note:** For trailer towing information refer to *Trailer towing* found in this chapter or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer.



**GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)** – is the Vehicle Curb Weight + cargo + passengers.

**GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). **The GVWR is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The GVW must never exceed the GVWR.**

## Tires, Wheels and Loading


- Example only:

**MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.**

DATE: XX/XX GVWR: XXXXXLB/ XXXXXKG  
 FRONT GAWR: XXXXL WITH REAR GAWR: XXXXLB  
 XXXXXKG WITH XXXXXKG WITH  
 XXXX/XXXXXX TIRES: XXXX/XXXXXX TIRES  
 XXXX,XX RIMS: XXXX,XX RIMS  
 AT XXX kPa/XX PSI COLD AT XXX kPa/XX PSI COLD

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR  
 VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN  
 EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXX  
 TYPE: XXX XXXXX



EXT PNT: XX RC: XX DSO:  
 WB BRK INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXXX  
 XXX X XX X XX X XX XXX


XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXX XXXX-XXXXXX-XX

**MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.**

DATE: xx/xx GVWR/PNBV: xxxxx LB/xxxxxKG  
 FRONT GAWR/PNBE AV / REAR GAWR/ PNBE AR  
 xxxxx /xxxxxB / xxxxxKG/xxxxLB  
 WITH/AVEC TIRES/PNEUS  
 xxxxx /xxxxx  
 xxxxx /xxxxx  
 xxxxxx RIMS/JANTES xxx,xxx


AT/A kPa/PSI/LPC xxx/xx COLD/A FROID xxx/xx  
 /JUMEELES

VIN: xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxxx  
 TYPE: xxx/xxxxx COMPLIES:xxxx/xxx-xxx xxxxxx  
 xxxxxx



EXT PNT: JJ RC: xx DSO:  
 WB INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR xxxxxx  
 xxx xx x xx x xxxxx xxx

XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXX XXXX-XXXXXX-XX

 **WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**GCW (Gross Combined Weight)** – is the weight of the loaded vehicle (GVW) plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer.

**GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer – including all cargo and passengers – that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicles' braking system is rated for operation at GVWR, not at GCWR. Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the GCW of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the GVWR of the towing vehicle. **The GCW must never exceed the GCWR.**

**Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight** – is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with only mandatory options, no cargo (internal or external), a tongue load of 10–15% (conventional trailer), and driver only (150 lb. [68 kg]). **Consult your authorized dealer (or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer) for more detailed information.**



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.



**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.



**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.  $(1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lb.})$ . In metric units  $(635 - 340 (5 \times 68) = 295 \text{ kg.})$
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

- Another example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, 4 of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 lb. (99 kg) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 lb. (13.5 kg) each. The calculation would be:  $1,400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1,400 - 1,100 - 150 = 150 \text{ lb.}$  Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5 \text{ kg.}$
- A final example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past 2 years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for 12-100 lb. (45 kg) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 lb. (99 kg), the calculation would be:  $1,400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1,400 - 440 - 1,200 = -240 \text{ lb.}$  No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the

174

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103 \text{ kg}$ . You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 lb. (104 kg). If you remove 3-100 lb. (45 kg) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:

$1,400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1,400 - 440 - 900 = 60 \text{ lb}$ . Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 \text{ kg}$ .

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label found on the edge of the driver's door.

### TRAILER TOWING

Your vehicle is classified as a light duty towing vehicle. Do not tow a trailer until your vehicle has been driven at least 1,000 miles (1,600 km).

**Note:** The L-series Town Car (extended length) is NOT rated for towing.

Towing a trailer places an additional load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, brakes, tires and suspension. Inspect these components carefully after towing.

Your loaded trailer should weigh no more than 1,500 lb. (680 kg). **Do not exceed the GVWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.**



**WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of the vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

The GCW of your vehicle and trailer should not exceed 6,600 lb. (2,993 kg).

### Preparing to tow

Use the proper equipment for towing a trailer and make sure it is properly attached to your vehicle. Contact your authorized dealer or a reliable trailer dealer as soon as possible if you require assistance.

### Hitches

Do not use hitches that clamp onto the vehicle bumper. Use a load carrying hitch. You must distribute the load in your trailer so that 10–15% of the total weight of the trailer is on the tongue.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Safety chains

Always connect the trailer's safety chains to the frame or hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. To connect the trailer's safety chains, cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow slack for turning corners.

If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions that the rental agency gives to you.

**Do not attach safety chains to the bumper.**

### Trailer brakes

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if installed properly and adjusted to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and Federal regulations.



**WARNING:** Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

The braking system of the tow vehicle is rated for operation at the GVWR not GCWR.

### Trailer lamps

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working. Contact your authorized dealer or trailer rental agency for proper instructions and equipment for hooking up trailer lamps.

### Driving while you tow

When towing a trailer:

- To ensure proper "break-in" of powertrain components, do not trailer tow during the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of a new vehicle.
- To ensure proper "break-in" of powertrain components during the first 500 miles (800 km) of trailer towing, drive no faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) with no full throttle starts.
- Turn off the speed control. The speed control may shut off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Consult your local motor vehicle speed regulations for towing a trailer.

176



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- To eliminate excessive shifting, use a lower gear. This will also assist in transmission cooling. For additional information, refer to *Automatic transmission operation* in the *Driving* chapter.
- Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Do not exceed the GCWR rating or transmission damage may occur.

### **Servicing after towing**

If you tow a trailer for long distances, your vehicle will require more frequent service intervals. Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for more information.

### **Trailer towing tips**

- Practice turning, stopping and backing up before starting on a trip to get the feel of the vehicle trailer combination. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels will clear curbs and other obstacles.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached.
- If you are driving down a long or steep hill, shift to a lower gear. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- The trailer tongue weight should be 10–15% of the loaded trailer weight.
- If you will be towing a trailer frequently in hot weather, hilly conditions, at GCWR, or any combination of these factors, consider refilling your rear axle with synthetic gear lube if not already so equipped. Refer to the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for the lubricant specification. Remember that regardless of the rear axle lube used, do not tow a trailer for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of a new vehicle, and that the first 500 miles (800 km) of towing be done at no faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) with no full throttle starts.
- After you have traveled 50 miles (80 km), thoroughly check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts.
- To aid in engine/transmission cooling and A/C efficiency during hot weather while stopped in traffic, place the gearshift lever in P (Park).
- Vehicles with trailers should not be parked on a grade. If you must park on a grade, place wheel chocks under the trailer's wheels.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Launching or retrieving a boat

**Disconnect the wiring to the trailer before backing the trailer into the water. Reconnect the wiring to the trailer after the trailer is removed from the water.**

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- do not allow waves to break higher than 6 inches (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- causing internal damage to the components.
- affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant any time the axle has been submerged in water. Rear axle lubricant quantities are not to be checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or repair required.

### RECREATIONAL TOWING

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. These guidelines are designed to ensure that your transmission is not damaged.

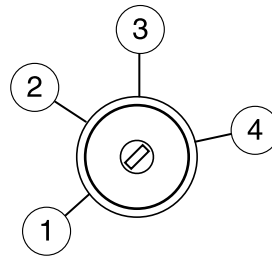
**All vehicles:** Do not tow your vehicle with any wheels on the ground, as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four (4) wheels off the ground such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, no recreational towing is permitted.

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle, see *Wrecker towing* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

### STARTING

#### Positions of the ignition

1. Off— shuts off the engine and all accessories/locks the gearshift lever and allows key removal.
2. Accessory— allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running.
3. On— all electrical circuits operational. Warning lights illuminated. Key position when driving.
4. Start— cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.



Refer to the *SecuriLock™ passive anti-theft system* section in the *Locks and Security* chapter for information on SecuriLock™ keys.

#### Preparing to start your vehicle

Engine starting is controlled by the powertrain control system.

This system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field strength of radio noise.

When starting a fuel-injected engine, avoid pressing the accelerator before or during starting. Only use the accelerator when you have difficulty starting the engine. For more information on starting the vehicle, refer to *Starting the engine* in this chapter.





**WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

## Driving

 **WARNING:** Do not start your vehicle in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. See *Guarding against exhaust fumes* in this chapter for more instructions.

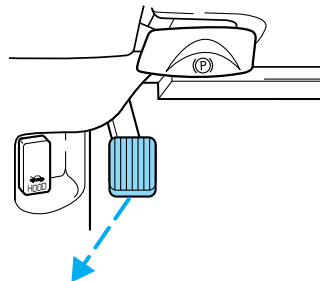
 **WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

### **Important safety precautions**

A computer system controls the engine's idle revolutions per minute (RPM). When the engine starts, the idle RPM runs higher than normal in order to warm the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have the vehicle checked. Do not allow the vehicle to idle for more than 10 minutes at the higher engine RPM.

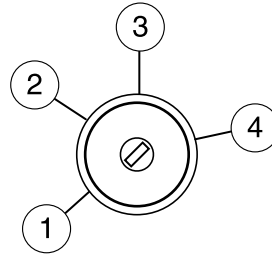
Before starting the vehicle:

1. Make sure all vehicle occupants have buckled their safety belts. For more information on safety belts and their proper usage, refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.
2. Make sure the headlamps and vehicle accessories are off.
3. Make sure the gearshift is in P (Park).
4. Make sure the parking brake is set.



## Driving

5. Turn the key to 3 (on) without turning the key to 4 (start).

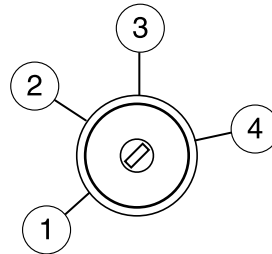


Some warning lights will briefly illuminate. See *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information regarding the warning lights.

### Starting the engine

1. Turn the key to 3 (on) without turning the key to 4 (start).

2. Turn the key to 4 (start), then release the key as soon as the engine starts. Excessive cranking could damage the starter.



**Note:** If the engine does not start within five seconds on the first try, turn the key to OFF, wait 10 seconds and try again. If the engine still fails to start, press the accelerator to the floor and try again; this will allow the engine to crank with the fuel shut off in case the engine is flooded with fuel.

### Cold weather starting (flexible fuel vehicles only)

The starting characteristics of all grades of E<sub>85</sub> ethanol make it unsuitable for use when ambient temperatures fall below 0°F (-18°C). Consult your fuel distributor for the availability of winter grade ethanol. As the outside temperature approaches freezing, ethanol fuel distributors should supply winter grade ethanol (same as with unleaded gasoline). If summer grade ethanol is used in cold weather conditions, 0°F to 32°F (-18°C to 0°C), you may experience increased cranking times, rough idle or hesitation until the engine has warmed up.

## Driving

You may experience a decrease in peak performance when the engine is cold when operating on E<sub>85</sub> ethanol.

Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time as starter damage may occur. If the engine fails to start, turn the key to off and wait 30 seconds before trying again.

Do not use starting fluid such as ether in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

If you should experience cold weather starting problems on E<sub>85</sub> ethanol, and neither an alternative brand of E<sub>85</sub> ethanol nor an engine block heater is available, the addition of unleaded gasoline to your tank will improve cold starting performance. Your vehicle is designed to operate on E<sub>85</sub> ethanol alone, unleaded gasoline alone, or any mixture of the two.

See *Choosing the right fuel* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information on ethanol.

### **If the engine fails to start using the preceding instructions (flexible fuel vehicles only)**

1. Press and hold down the accelerator 1/3 to 1/2 way to floor, then crank the engine.
2. When the engine starts, release the key, then gradually release the accelerator pedal as the engine speeds up. If the engine still fails to start, repeat Step 1.

### **Guarding against exhaust fumes**

Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.



**WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

### **Important ventilating information**

If the engine is idling while the vehicle is stopped for a long period of time, open the windows at least one inch (2.5 cm) or adjust the heating or air conditioning to bring in fresh air.

### **ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)**

An engine block heater warms the engine coolant which aids in starting and allows the heater/defroster system to respond quickly. If your vehicle

182

## Driving

is equipped with this system, your equipment includes a heater element which is installed in your engine block and a wire harness which allows the user to connect the system to a grounded 120 volt A/C electrical source. The block heater system is most effective when outdoor temperatures reach below 0°F (-18°C).



**WARNING:** Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or physical injury.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged (cheater) adapters.

Prior to using the engine block heater, follow these recommendations for proper and safe operation:

- For your safety, use an outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). Use only an extension cord that can be used outdoors, in cold temperatures, and is clearly marked "Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances." Never use an indoor extension cord outdoors; it could result in an electric shock or fire hazard.
- Use a 16 gauge outdoor extension cord, minimum.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords. Instead, use one extension cord which is long enough to reach from the engine block heater cord to the outlet without stretching.
- Make certain that the extension cord is in excellent condition (not patched or spliced). Store your extension cord indoors at temperatures above 32°F (0°C). Outdoor conditions can deteriorate extension cords over a period of time.
- To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two pronged (cheater) adapters. Also ensure that the block heater, especially the cord, is in good condition before use.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug /engine block heater cord plug connection is free and clear of water in order to prevent possible shock or fire.
- Be sure that areas where the vehicle is parked are clean and clear of all combustibles such as petroleum products, dust, rags, paper and similar items.

## Driving

- Be sure that the engine block heater, heater cord and extension cord are solidly connected. A poor connection can cause the cord to become very hot and may result in an electrical shock or fire. Be sure to check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately a half hour.
- Finally, have the engine block heater system checked during your fall tune-up to be sure it's in good working order.

### How to use the engine block heater

Ensure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. To clean them, use a dry cloth.

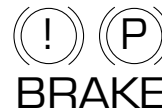
Depending on the type of factory installed equipment, your engine block heater will use .4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. Your factory installed block heater system does not have a thermostat; however, maximum temperature is attained after approximately three hours of operation. Block heater operation longer than three hours will not improve system performance and will unnecessarily use additional electricity.

Make sure system is unplugged and properly stowed before driving the vehicle. While not in use, make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the engine block heater cord plug.

## BRAKES

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and should be inspected by an authorized dealer. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized dealer.

Refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for information on the brake system warning light.



### Four-wheel anti-lock brake system (ABS)

Your vehicle is equipped with an Anti-lock braking system (ABS). This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking. Noise from the ABS pump motor and brake pedal pulsation may be observed during ABS braking and the brake pedal may suddenly travel a little farther as soon as ABS braking is done and normal brake operation resumes. These are normal characteristics of the ABS and should be no reason for concern.

184

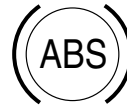


**Using ABS**

When hard braking is required, apply continuous force on the brake pedal; do not pump the brake pedal since this will reduce the effectiveness of the ABS and will increase your vehicle's stopping distance. The ABS will be activated immediately, allowing you to retain steering control during hard braking and on slippery surfaces. However, the ABS does not decrease stopping distance.

**ABS warning lamp**

The ABS lamp in the instrument cluster momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the ABS may be disabled and may need to be serviced.



Even when the ABS is disabled, normal braking is still effective. If your BRAKE warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have your brake system serviced immediately by an authorized dealer.

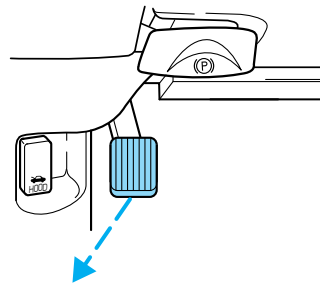


**Parking brake with auto-release**

Apply the parking brake whenever the vehicle is parked.


To set the parking brake:

1. Move the gearshift to P (Park).
2. Press pedal downward.



The BRAKE warning lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates and remains illuminated (when the ignition is turned to the on position) until the parking brake is fully released.

## Driving

 **WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

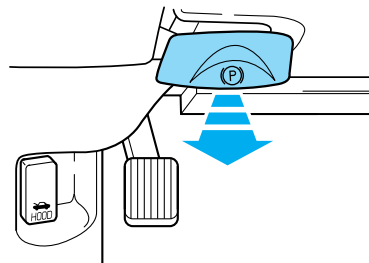
The parking brake is not recommended to stop a moving vehicle. However, if the normal brakes fail, the parking brake can be used to stop your vehicle in an emergency. Since the parking brake applies only the rear brakes, the vehicle's stopping distance will increase greatly and the handling of your vehicle will be adversely affected.

Your vehicle has an automatic parking brake release. To release the parking brake:

1. Start the vehicle.
2. Press the brake pedal.
3. Move the gearshift from the P (Park) position to one of the forward gears (the parking brake will not release automatically when you shift into reverse). The brake pedal must remain pressed while the gearshift is moved.

If the parking brake fails to release after completing this procedure, use the manual parking brake release lever.

Pull the lever to manually release the parking brake.



## TRACTION CONTROL

Your vehicle is equipped with a traction control system (except on commercial conversion packages). This system helps you maintain the stability and steerability of your vehicle, especially on slippery road surfaces such as snow- or ice-covered roads and gravel roads. The system will allow your vehicle to make better use of available traction in these conditions.

## Driving

During traction control operation, the traction control active light will illuminate, you may hear an electric motor type of sound coming from the engine compartment and the



engine will not “rev-up” when you press farther on the accelerator. This is normal system behavior and should be no reason for concern.



**WARNING:** Aggressive driving in any road conditions can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of severe personal injury or property damage. The occurrence of a traction control event is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this may lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If you experience a severe road event, SLOW DOWN.

The traction control switch, located on the left side of the instrument panel, allows the driver to enable and disable the system. When disabled, the OFF will be illuminated on the switch. The traction control system will automatically turn on every time the ignition is turned to off and on.



If you should become stuck in snow or ice or on a very slippery road surface, try switching the traction control system off. This may allow excess wheel spin to “dig” the vehicle out and enable a successful “rocking” maneuver. Remember to switch the traction control system back on once the vehicle is no longer stuck.

If a system fault is detected, the traction control active light will illuminate, the traction control button will not turn the system on or off and your vehicle should be serviced by an authorized dealer.

### STEERING

To help prevent damage to the power steering system, never hold the steering wheel at its furthest turning points (until it stops) for more than a few seconds when the engine is running.

## Driving

It is also important to maintain a proper power steering fluid level in the power steering fluid reservoir:

- Do not operate the vehicle with a low power steering pump fluid level. See *Power steering fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.
- Some noise is normal during operation. If the noise is excessive, check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your authorized dealer.
- Heavy or uneven steering efforts may be caused by low power steering pump fluid level. Check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your authorized dealer.
- Do not fill the power steering pump reservoir above the maximum level, as this may result in leaks from the reservoir. See *Power steering fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

If the power steering system breaks down (or if the engine is off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort.

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire
- uneven tire wear
- loose or worn suspension components
- loose or worn steering components
- improper steering alignment

### **AIR SUSPENSION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)**

The air suspension system is designed to improve ride, handling and general vehicle performance during:

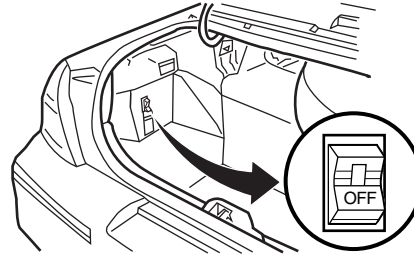
- Certain road conditions
- Steering maneuvers
- Braking
- Accelerations


## Driving

This system keeps the rear of your vehicle at a constant level by automatically adding air or releasing air from the springs.

If you exceed the load limit, the rear air suspension may not operate.

The air suspension shut-off switch is located on the left side of the trunk. If this switch is in the off position, the rear air suspension will not operate.



 **WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with air suspension, turn off the air suspension switch prior to jacking, hoisting or towing your vehicle.

Normal vehicle operation does not require any action by the driver.

### **TRACTION-LOK AXLE (IF EQUIPPED)**

This axle provides added traction on slippery surfaces, particularly when one wheel is on a poor traction surface. Under normal conditions, the Traction-Lok axle functions like a standard rear axle. The axle may exhibit a slight noise or vibration in tight turns with low vehicle speed. This is normal behavior and indicates the axle is working.

### **BRAKE-SHIFT INTERLOCK**

This vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents the gearshift lever from being moved from P (Park) when the ignition is in the on position unless brake pedal is pressed.

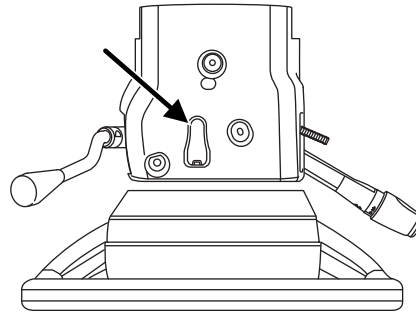
If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of P (Park) with ignition in the on position and the brake pedal pressed, it is possible that a fuse has blown or the vehicle's brakelamps are not operating properly. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

If the fuse is not blown, perform the following procedure:


1. Apply the parking brake, turn the ignition to accessory.


## Driving

2. Locate the access plug on the underside of the steering column cover.
3. Remove the access plug using a flat head screwdriver, then press and hold the override button using a flat head screwdriver. With the key in the on position, apply the brake pedal and shift the transmission into N (Neutral) while continuing to press the override button.
4. Reinstall the access plug cover, start the vehicle and release the parking brake.



 **WARNING:** Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brakelamps are working.

 **WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

 **WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION OPERATION

### Understanding the gearshift positions of the 4-speed automatic transmission

#### P (Park)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the rear wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:


- Start the engine
- Press the brake pedal
- Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear



## Driving

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

- Come to a complete stop
- Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park)

 **WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

### R (Reverse)

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

### N (Neutral)

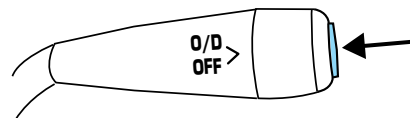
With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

### D (Overdrive)

The normal driving position for the best fuel economy. Transmission operates in gears one through four.



Overdrive can be deactivated by pressing the transmission control switch on the gearshift lever.



### Drive (not shown)

Drive is activated when the transmission control switch is pressed.

- This position allows for all forward gears except overdrive.
- O/D OFF lamp is illuminated.
- Provides engine braking.
- Use when driving conditions cause excessive shifting from O/D to other gears. Examples: heavy city traffic where continuous shifting in and out of overdrive occurs, hilly terrain, heavy loads, trailer towing and when engine braking is required.

## Driving

- To return to O/D (overdrive mode), press the transmission control switch. The O/D OFF lamp will not be illuminated.
- O/D (Overdrive) is automatically returned each time the key is turned off.

### 2 (Second)

This position allows for second gear only.

- Provides engine braking.
- Use to start-up on slippery roads.
- To return to **D** (Overdrive), move the gearshift lever into the **D** (Overdrive) position.
- Selecting 2 (Second) at higher speeds will cause the transmission to downshift to second gear at the appropriate vehicle speed.

### 1 (First)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- Allows upshifts by moving gearshift lever.
- Will not downshift into 1 (First) at high speeds; allows for 1 (First) when vehicle reaches slower speeds.

### Forced downshifts

- Allowed in **D** (Overdrive) or Drive.
- Press the accelerator to the floor.
- Allows transmission to select an appropriate gear.

### ***If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow***

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

If necessary, try turning the Traction Control™ system off. This will allow the wheels to spin, which may help to free your stuck vehicle. For more information, refer to *Traction Control™* in this chapter.

**Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.**


**Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.**





## Driving


### REVERSE SENSING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The reverse sensing system sounds a tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper when the R (Reverse) gear is selected.

 **WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the reverse sensing system as contained in this section. The park assist is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at “parking speeds”. Inclement weather may also affect the function of the RSS; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

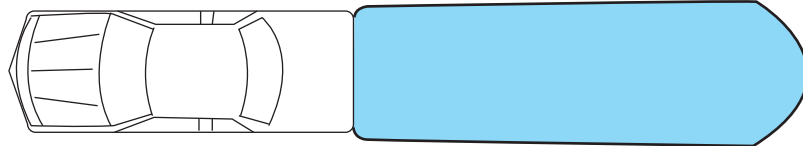
 **WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in R (Reverse) and when using the reverse sensing system.

 **WARNING:** This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting objects to avoid damaging the vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

 **WARNING:** Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the reverse sensing system may create false beeps.

The system will assist the driver in detecting certain objects while the vehicle moves in reverse at speeds less than 6 mph (10 km/h). The system is not effective at speeds greater than 6 mph (10 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.

## Driving



The system detects obstacles within approximately 16 feet (five meters), at speeds above 2.5 mph (4 km/h) behind the rear bumper with a decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper. If vehicle speed is below 2.5 mph (4 km/h), the system detects obstacles within approximately 9 feet (2.6 meters) behind the rear bumper with a decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper. As you move closer to the obstacle, the rate of the tone increases. When the distance to the obstacle is approximately less than 18 inches (45.0 cm), the tone will sound continuously. If the system detects an object that is approaching the vehicle at such a rate that rapid braking is required, a very high rate tone will sound. If this tone is heard while reversing, the driver is advised to slow down immediately until the tone either changes to a slower rate or stops.

Audible Warnings	
Distance to Object	Warning
Speed above 2.5 mph (4 km/h)	
up to 1.6 feet (.5 meters)	Solid
1.6 feet (.5 meters) to 3.1 feet (1 meter)	Fast beep
3.1 feet (1 meter) to 5.7 feet (1.8 meters)	Medium/fast beep
5.7 feet (1.8 meters) to 9 feet (2.8 meters)	Medium beep
9 feet (2.8 meters) to 13 feet (4 meters)	Medium/slow beep

## Driving

Audible Warnings	
Distance to Object	Warning
13 feet (4 meters) to 19.6 feet (6 meters)	Slow beep
Speed below 2.5 mph (4 km/h)	
up to 1.4 feet (.4 meters)	Solid
1.4 feet (.4 meters) to 3 feet (.9 meters)	Fast beep
3 feet (.9 meters) to 4.5 feet (1.4 meters)	Medium beep
4.5 feet (1.4 meters) to 6.3 feet (1.9 meters)	Medium/slow beep
6.3 feet (1.9 meters) to 8.7 feet (2.6 meters)	Slow beep
8.7 feet (2.6 meters) to 16.4 feet (5 meters)	No sound

The reverse sensing system is automatically enabled when the gearshift lever is placed in R (Reverse) and the ignition is on. A control in the message center allows the driver to disable the system, refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information.

The message center will indicate the system is off and will not allow the driver to switch the system on to indicate a failure of the reverse sensing system.

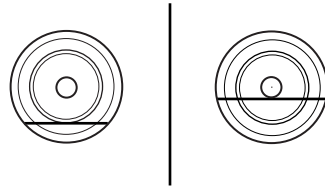
**The radar sensor is located behind the rear bumper/fascia. Always keep the rear bumper/fascia free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. These elements may cause the system to operate inaccurately.**

**If the vehicle sustains damage to the rear bumper/fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.**

## Driving

### DRIVING THROUGH WATER

If driving through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed very slowly especially when the depth is not known. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks).



When driving through water, traction or brake capability may be limited. Also, water may enter your engine's air intake and severely damage your engine or your vehicle may stall. **Driving through deep water where the transmission vent tube is submerged may allow water into the transmission and cause internal transmission damage.**

**Once through the water, always dry the brakes by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.** Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as quickly as dry brakes.

## Roadside Emergencies

### ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

#### Getting roadside assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24-hours, seven days a week
- for the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner Guide portfolio.

Roadside assistance will cover:

- a flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles that have been supplied with a tire inflation kit)
- battery jump start
- lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility)
- fuel delivery – Independent Service Contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2.0 gallons (7.5L) of gasoline or 5 gallons (18.9L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Fuel delivery service is limited to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- winch out – available within 100 feet (30.5 meters) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- towing – Ford/Mercury/Lincoln eligible vehicle towed to an authorized dealer within 35 miles (56.3 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests to be towed to an authorized dealer more than 35 miles (56.3 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 miles (56.3 km).

Trailers shall be covered up to \$200 if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the trailer is disabled, but the towing vehicle is operational, the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

#### **Canadian customers refer to your Customer Information Guide for information on:**

- coverage period
- exact fuel amounts

## Roadside Emergencies

- towing of your disabled vehicle
- emergency travel expense reimbursement
- travel planning benefits

In Canada, for uninterrupted Roadside Assistance coverage, you may purchase extended coverage prior to your Basic Warranty's Roadside Assistance expiring. For more information and enrollment, contact 1-877-294-2582 or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca).

### Using roadside assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. In the United States, this card is found in the Owner Guide portfolio in the glove compartment. In Canada, the card is found in the *Customer Information Guide* in the glove compartment.

U.S. Ford, Mercury and Lincoln vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 miles. To obtain reimbursement information, U.S. Ford, Mercury and Lincoln vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers will be asked to submit their original receipts.

Canadian customers who need to obtain reimbursement information, call 1-800-665-2006.

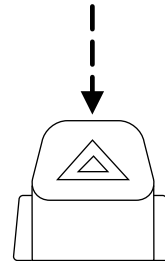
### HAZARD FLASHER CONTROL

The hazard flasher is located on the steering column, just behind the steering wheel. The hazard flashers will operate when the ignition is in any position or if the key is not in the ignition.

Press in the flasher control and all front and rear direction signals will flash. Press the flasher control again to turn them off. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

**Note:** With extended use, the flasher may run down your battery.

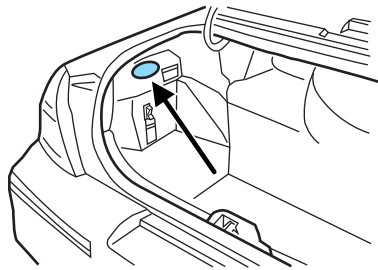
198



## Roadside Emergencies

### FUEL PUMP SHUT-OFF SWITCH FUEL RESET

The fuel pump shut-off switch is a device intended to stop the electric fuel pump when your vehicle has been involved in a substantial jolt. After a collision, if the engine cranks but does not start, the fuel pump shut-off switch may have been activated.



The fuel pump shut-off switch is located on a bracket inside of the luggage compartment.

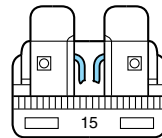
Use the following procedure to reset the fuel pump shut-off switch.

1. Turn the ignition to the off position.
2. Check the fuel system for leaks.
3. If no fuel leak is apparent, reset the fuel pump shut-off switch by pressing the reset button.
4. Turn the ignition to the on position. Pause for a few seconds and return the key to the off position.
5. Make a further check for leaks in the fuel system.

### FUSES AND RELAYS

#### Fuses

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.



**Note:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

## Roadside Emergencies

### Standard fuse amperage rating and color

COLOR					
Fuse rating	Mini fuses	Standard fuses	Maxi fuses	Cartridge maxi fuses	Fuse link cartridge
2A	Grey	Grey	—	—	—
3A	Violet	Violet	—	—	—
4A	Pink	Pink	—	—	—
5A	Tan	Tan	—	—	—
7.5A	Brown	Brown	—	—	—
10A	Red	Red	—	—	—
15A	Blue	Blue	—	—	—
20A	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Blue	Blue
25A	Natural	Natural	—	—	—
30A	Green	Green	Green	Pink	Pink
40A	—	—	Orange	Green	Green
50A	—	—	Red	Red	Red
60A	—	—	Blue	Yellow	Yellow
70A	—	—	Tan	—	Brown
80A	—	—	Natural	Black	Black

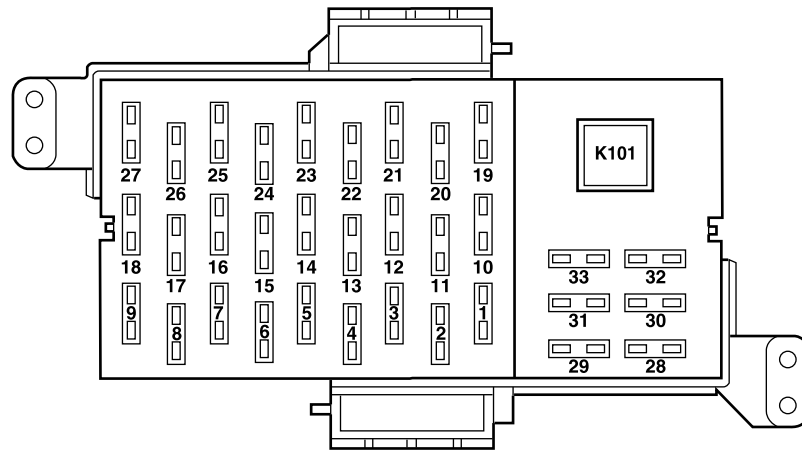
### Passenger compartment fuse panel

The fuse panel is located below and to the left of the steering wheel by the brake pedal. Remove the panel cover to access the fuses.

To remove a fuse use the fuse puller tool provided on the fuse panel cover.



## Roadside Emergencies



The fuses are coded as follows.

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
1	10A	Starter relay coil
2	10A	Restraint control module (RCM), Occupant classification sensor (OCS), Passenger airbag deactivation indicator (PADI)
3	10A	Audio
4	10A	Back-up lamps, Anti-lock brake system (ABS)
5	7.5A	Lighting control module (LCM)
6	10A	Passive anti-theft system (PATS), Powertrain control module (PCM) relay coil, Ignition relay coil, Fuel relay coil
7	10A	Wiper module

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
8	10A	Power decklid module (PDM), Overdrive cancel switch, Cluster, Compass module, LCM, Traction Control™ switch
9	7.5A	Door lock switch illumination, Heated seat switch illumination, Electrochromatic mirror
10	15A	Hazards
11	15A	Turn signal
12	15A	Audio
13	10A	Extended rear park aide module, Cluster
14	15A	Adjustable pedals, Delayed accessory relay coil
15	10A	Dual automatic temperature control (DATC) module
16	20A	OBD II
17	10A	A/C cycle switch, Heated seat modules
18	15A	LCM (Interior lighting)
19	7.5A	Driver's door module (DDM) switches, PDM, Power mirrors, Driver seat module (DSM), DDM, PATS LED
20	10A	LCM (Right-hand low beam)
21	10A	Analog clock, LCM (Illumination)
22	10A	LCM (Left-hand low beam)
23	10A	LCM
24	15A	LCM (High beams), Multi-function switch (Flash-to-pass)
25	10A	DATC module, Cluster

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
26	15A	LCM (Park lamps, cornering lamps, license lamps)
27	—	Not used
28	7.5A	Brake signal, LCM (BTSD), ABS
29	—	Not used
30	—	Not used
31	5A	LCM (Key in)
32	7.5A	Delay accessory (audio)
33	—	Not used
K101	—	Delayed accessory

### Power distribution box

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. The power distribution box contains high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.



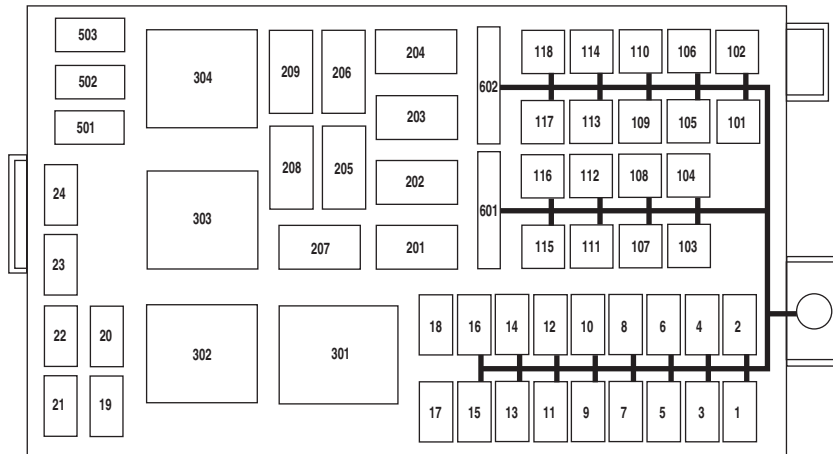
**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the Power Distribution Box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to the *Battery* section of the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

## Roadside Emergencies



The high-current fuses are coded as follows.

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
1	30A*	Ignition switch
2	20A*	Rear heated seats
3	10A*	Powertrain control module (PCM) keep alive power and canister vent
4	20A*	Fuel relay feed
5	20A*	Instrument panel power point
6	15A*	Alternator regulator
7	30A*	PCM relay feed
8	20A*	Driver's door module (DDM)
9	15A*	Ignition coil relay feed
10	20A*	Horn relay feed
11	15A*	A/C clutch relay feed
12	20A*	Audio

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
13	10A*	Rear air suspension module (RASM)
14	20A*	Stop lamp switch
15	15A*	Lumbar, Fuel door
16	20A*	Heated seats
17	—	Not used
18	—	Not used
19	15A*	Injectors
20	15A*	PCM
21	15A*	Powertrain loads and sensors
22	—	Not used
23	10A*	Heated mirrors
24	—	Not used
101	40A**	Blower relay feed
102	50A**	Cooling fan
103	50A**	Instrument panel fuse box feed #1
104	50A**	Instrument panel fuse box feed #2
105	30A**	Starter relay feed
106	40A**	ABS module (Pump)
107	40A**	Rear defroster relay feed
108	40A**	Power decklid module (PDM)
109	20A**	ABS module (Valves)
110	30A**	Wiper module
111	20A**	Left rear power point
112	30A**	RASM (Air compressor)
113	20A**	Rear power point #2
114	20A**	Instrument panel fuse box feed #3
115	20A**	Rear cigar lighters
116	30A**	Decklid pulldown module
117	20A**	Cigar lighter
118	—	Not used

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
201	Micro relay	A/C clutch
202	—	Not used
203	Micro relay	Ignition coil
204	Micro relay	PCM
205	—	Not used
206	Micro relay	Fuel
207	—	Not used
208	—	Not used
209	Micro relay	Horn
301	Mini relay	Starter
302	Mini relay	RASM (Air compressor)
303	Mini relay	Blower
304	Mini relay	Rear defroster
501	—	Not used
502	Diode	Reverse battery
503	Diode	Horn, Door latch
601	20A Circuit Breaker	Power seats, driver seat module
602	20A Circuit Breaker	Delayed accessory relay for windows, audio
* Mini Fuses ** Cartridge Fuses		

### CHANGING THE TIRES

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

**Note:** The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full functionality of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the TPMS sensors, refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. Replace the spare  
206

## Roadside Emergencies

tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the TPMS sensor for damage.



**WARNING:** The use of tire sealants may damage your Tire Pressure Monitoring System and should not be used.



**WARNING:** Refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for important information. If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

### Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information



**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road tire/wheel that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spares:** This spare tire begins with the letter “T” for tire size and may have “Temporary Use Only” molded in the sidewall
2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: “THIS TIRE AND WHEEL FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY”

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, **do not:**

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h)
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label
- Tow a trailer
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire

## Roadside Emergencies

- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability

### 3. Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel, **do not:**

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h)
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire/wheel at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire/wheel

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability
- All-Wheel driving capability (if applicable)
- Load leveling adjustment (if applicable)

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel and seek service as soon as possible.

208



## Roadside Emergencies

### Full-size Matching Spare Tire/Wheel Information

This spare tire/wheel will match the road tire/wheel. When driving with the full size matching spare tire/wheel, do not exceed 70 mph (113 km/h). It is intended for temporary use only. This means if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible.

### Tire change procedure

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS), the system indicator light will illuminate when the spare is in use. To restore the full functionality of the TPMS system, all road wheels equipped with the tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle

If your vehicle is equipped with TPMS, have a flat tire serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the TPMS sensor, refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the vehicle is in P (Park).



**WARNING:** To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure the parking brake is set, then block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.



**WARNING:** If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

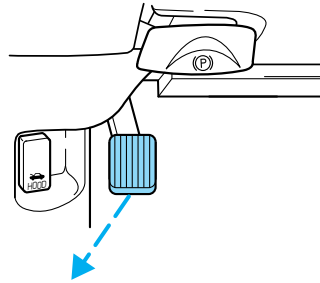


**WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

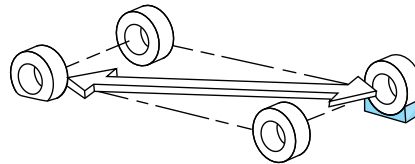
**Note:** Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

## Roadside Emergencies

1. Park on a level surface, activate hazard flashers and set parking brake.

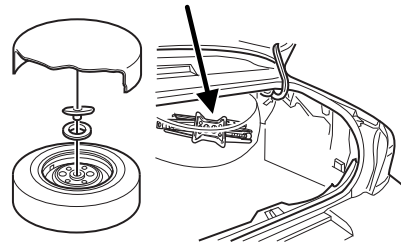


2. Place gearshift lever in P (Park), turn engine off and block the diagonally opposite wheel.

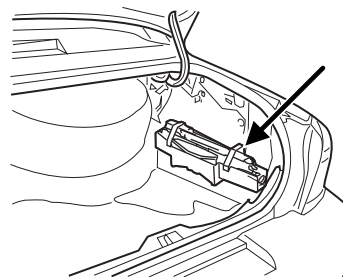


3. Remove the spare tire and the jack. The jack could be located:


- under the full size spare tire or

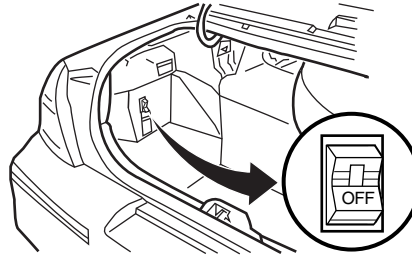


- in the trunk, (in a holder bracket), on the right-hand side, next to the wheel well.



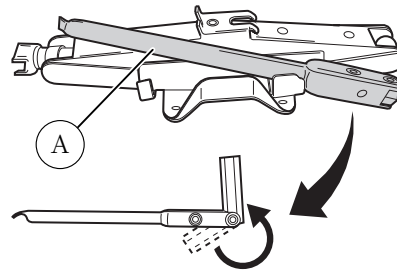
## Roadside Emergencies

 **WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with air suspension, turn off the air suspension switch prior to jacking, hoisting or towing your vehicle.

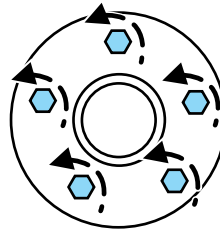


Refer to *Air suspension system* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

4. Remove the lug wrench (A) from the jack. Rotate the lug wrench socket out from the handle.



5. Locate pry off notch (if equipped) and remove the center ornament from the aluminum wheel with the tapered end of the wheel nut wrench that came with your vehicle. Insert and twist the handle, then pry against the wheel.



6. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

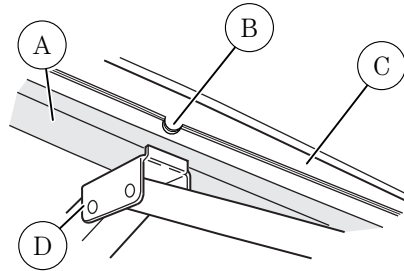
## Roadside Emergencies

**STOP** Before placing the jack under the vehicle, NOTE the jack location markings:

### JACK LOCATION-FRONT

The jack location markings can be found **on the lower outer edge of the body**.

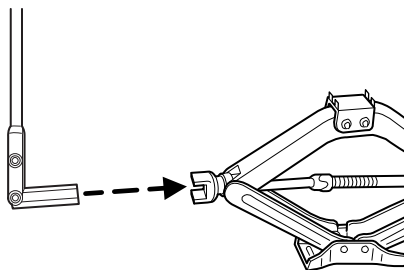
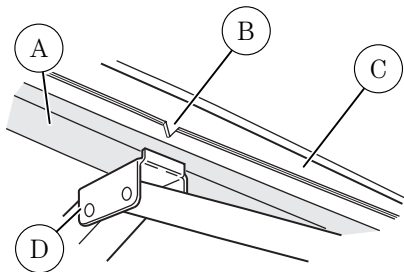
- Locate the jack locator mark (B -**semi-circle**) on the body (C) near the tire you are changing, then place the jack (D) **under the frame (A) of the vehicle** aligning it with the mark (B -**semi-circle**).




### JACK LOCATION-REAR

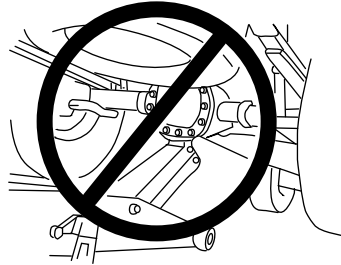
The jack location markings can be found **on the lower outer edge of the body**.

- Locate the jack locator mark (B -**triangle**) on the body (C) near the tire you are changing, then place the jack (D) **under the frame (A) of the vehicle** aligning it with the mark (B -**triangle**).
- Position the jack according to the following guides and turn the jack handle clockwise until the wheel is completely off the ground.



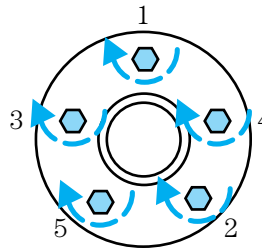
## Roadside Emergencies

 **WARNING:** To lessen risk of personal injury, do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while changing a tire. Do not start the engine when your vehicle is on the jack. The jack is **ONLY** meant for changing the tire.



- **Never use the rear differential as a jacking point.**

7. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.
8. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
9. Lower the vehicle by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.
10. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. Refer to *Wheel lug nut torque specifications* later in this chapter for the proper lug nut torque specification.
11. Put flat tire, jack and lug wrench away. Be sure to stow the jack properly in the holder bracket.
12. Turn on the air suspension switch.




## Roadside Emergencies

### WHEEL LUG NUT TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

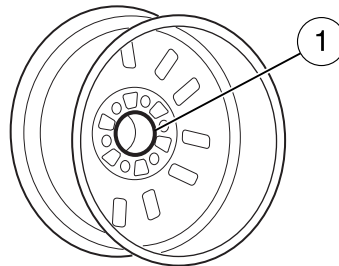
Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 km) after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

Bolt size	Wheel lug nut torque*	
	lb.ft.	N•m
½ x 20	100	135

\* Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

 **WARNING:** When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Ensure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

**Note:** Inspect the wheel pilot hole prior to installation. If there is visible corrosion in wheel pilot hole, remove loose particles by wiping with clean rag and apply grease. Apply grease only to the wheel pilot hole surface by smearing a “dime” (1 square cm) sized glob of grease around the wheel pilot surface (1) with end of finger. DO NOT apply grease to lugnut/stud holes or wheel-to-brake surfaces.



## Roadside Emergencies

### JUMP STARTING



**WARNING:** The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in injury or vehicle damage.



**WARNING:** Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

**Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.**

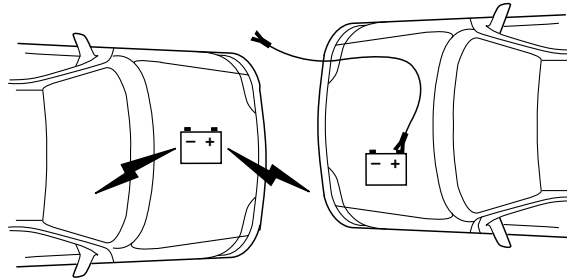
### Preparing your vehicle

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the automatic transmission must relearn its shift strategy. As a result, the transmission may have firm and/or soft shifts. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation.

1. **Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.**
2. Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.
3. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles **do not** touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles and stay clear of the engine cooling fan and other moving parts.
4. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.
5. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

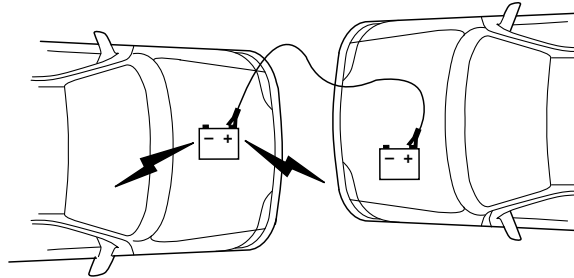
## Roadside Emergencies

### Connecting the jumper cables



1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

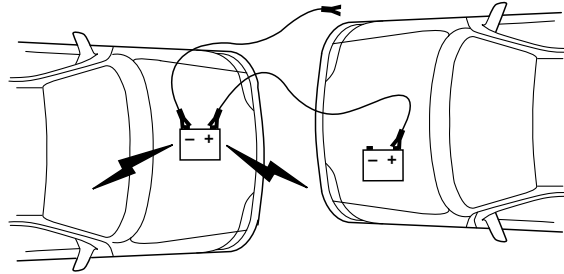
**Note:** In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.



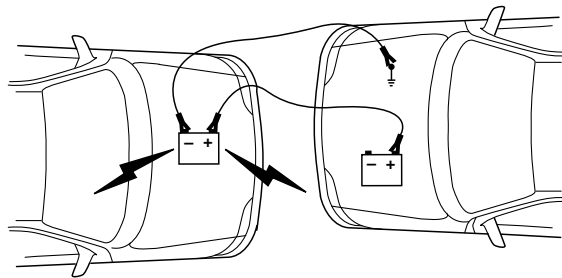
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.



## Roadside Emergencies



3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.



4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the carburetor/fuel injection system.

**Note:** Do not attach the negative (-) cable to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as *grounding* points.



**WARNING:** Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

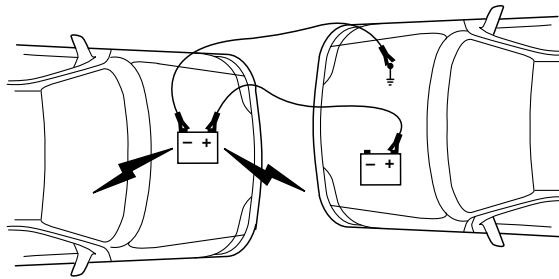
5. Ensure that the cables are clear of fan blades, belts, moving parts of both engines, or any fuel delivery system parts.

## Roadside Emergencies

### Jump starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

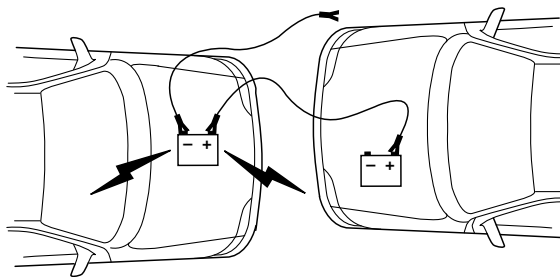
### Removing the jumper cables



### Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

1. Remove the jumper cable from the *ground* metal surface.

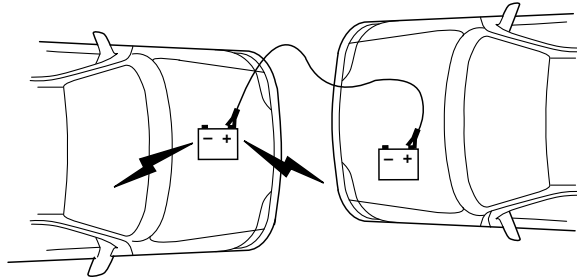
**Note:** In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.



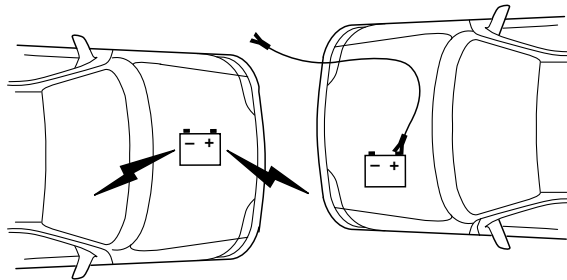
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) connection of the booster vehicle's battery.

218

## Roadside Emergencies



3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.

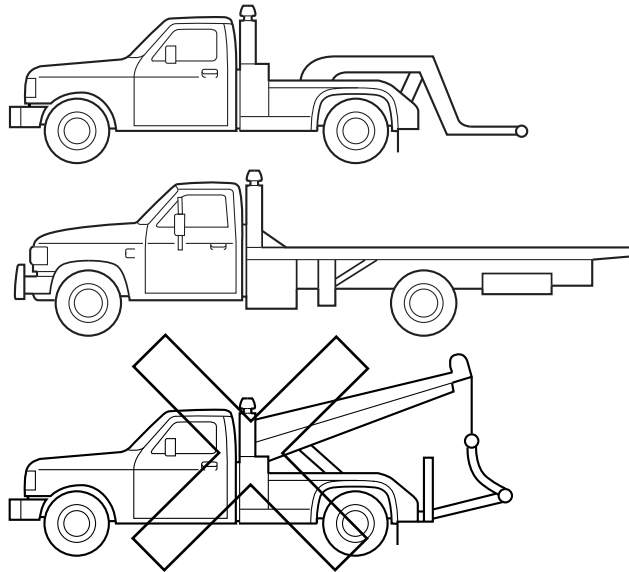


4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can *relearn* its idle conditions.

## Roadside Emergencies

### WRECKER TOWING



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

It is recommended that your vehicle be towed with a wheel lift or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure.

If equipped with an air suspension system, the air suspension control in the luggage compartment must be turned to the off position before your vehicle can be towed.

**If the vehicle is towed by other means or incorrectly, vehicle damage may occur.**

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

## Roadside Emergencies

### Emergency towing

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies, car hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle) your vehicle (regardless of transmission powertrain configuration) can be flat towed (all wheels on the ground) under the following conditions:

- Vehicle is facing forward so that it is being towed in a forward direction.
- Place the transmission in N (Neutral). Refer to *Brake-shift interlock* in the *Driving* chapter for specific instructions if you cannot move the gear shift lever into N (Neutral).
- Maximum speed is not to exceed 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 miles (80 km).

## Customer Assistance

### GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized Ford, Lincoln, or Mercury dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and/or equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

### Away from home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

#### Mailing address

Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48121

#### Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)

#### Online

Additional information and resources are available online at [www.genuineservice.com](http://www.genuineservice.com).

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State, or Zip Code
- Owner Guides
- Maintenance Schedules
- Recalls
- Ford Extended Service Plans
- Ford Genuine Accessories
- Service specials and promotions.

222

## Customer Assistance

In Canada:

**Mailing address (Ford vehicles)**

Customer Relationship Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

**Telephone**

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

**Online**

[www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)

**Mailing address (Lincoln vehicles)**

Lincoln Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

**Telephone**

1-800-387-9333

**Online**

[www.lincolncanada.com](http://www.lincolncanada.com)

**Additional assistance**

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing authorized dealer.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center

In order to help you serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Your telephone number (home and business)
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located
- The vehicle's current odometer reading

In some states, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

223

## Customer Assistance

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

### IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 miles (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time)

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company  
16800 Executive Plaza Drive  
Mail Drop 3NE-B  
Dearborn, MI 48126



## Customer Assistance

### **THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)**

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined on the first page of the *Customer Assistance* section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation and your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

You are not bound by the decision, but should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford must abide by the accepted decision as well. Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB.

**BBB AUTO LINE Application:** Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE  
4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800  
Arlington, Virginia 22203-1833**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

**Note:** Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

## Customer Assistance

### **UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)**

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight-forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding both to you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685.

### **GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA**

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact a regional office or owner relations/customer relationship office.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company/Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the U.S.

## Customer Assistance

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Central America, the Caribbean, or the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY  
FORD EXPORT OPERATIONS  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, Michigan 48101  
U.S.A.  
Telephone: (313) 594-4857  
FAX: (313) 390-0804  
Email: [expcac@ford.com](mailto:expcac@ford.com)

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer employees cannot help you, they can direct you to the nearest Ford affiliate office.

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate outside of the U.S. or Canada, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations.

**Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.**

### ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED  
P.O. Box 07150  
Detroit, Michigan 48207

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:  
[www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com).

*(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)*

### Obtaining a French Owner's Guide

French Owner's Guides can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by writing to:

Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
Service Publications CHQ202  
The Canadian Road  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, ON, Canada  
L6J 5E4

## Customer Assistance

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.



If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator  
1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast  
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, using their toll-free number: 1-800-333-0510.

### WASHING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A), which is available from your authorized dealer.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash a vehicle that is “hot to the touch” or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.
- Always use a clean sponge or car wash mitt with plenty of water for best results.
- Dry the vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.
- It is especially important to wash the vehicle regularly during the winter months, as dirt and road salt are difficult to remove and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits because they can cause damage to the vehicle’s paintwork and trim over time. Use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42) which is available from your authorized dealer.
- Remove any exterior accessories, such as antennas, before entering a car wash.
- **Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface; if these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash off as soon as possible.**

### Exterior chrome

- Wash the vehicle first, using cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- Use Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15), available from your authorized dealer. Apply the product as you would a wax to clean bumpers and other chrome parts; allow the cleaner to dry for a few minutes, then wipe off the haze with a clean, dry rag.
- **Never use abrasive materials such as steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.**
- After polishing chrome bumpers, apply a coating of Motorcraft Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A), available from your authorized dealer, or an equivalent quality product to help protect from environmental effects.

## Cleaning

### WAXING

- Wash the vehicle first.
- Do not use waxes that contain abrasives; use Motorcraft Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A), which is available from your authorized dealer, or an equivalent quality product.
- Do not allow paint sealant to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim, such as grained door handles, roof racks, bumpers, side moldings, mirror housings or the windshield cowl area. The paint sealant will “gray” or stain the parts over time.

### PAINT CHIPS

Your authorized dealer has touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Take your color code (printed on a sticker in the driver's door jamb) to your authorized dealer to ensure you get the correct color.

- Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.
- Always read the instructions before using the products.

### ALUMINUM WHEELS AND WHEEL COVERS

Aluminum wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clearcoat paint finish. In order to maintain their shine:

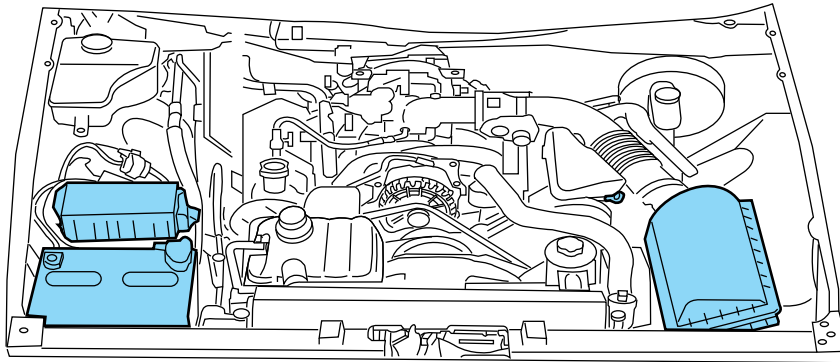
- Clean weekly with Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A), which is available from your authorized dealer. Heavy dirt and brake dust accumulation may require agitation with a sponge. Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water.
- Never apply any cleaning chemical to hot or warm wheel rims or covers.
- Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims or covers. Chemical-strength cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clearcoat finish over time.
- Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42), available from your authorized dealer.

## Cleaning

### ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal. When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (ZC-20) on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft Engine Shampoo (CXC-66-A).
- Cover the highlighted areas to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.



- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.

### PLASTIC (NON-PAINTED) EXTERIOR PARTS

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts. These products are available from your authorized dealer.

- For routine cleaning, use Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- If tar or grease spots are present, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42).

## Cleaning

### WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

The windshield, rear and side windows and the wiper blades should be cleaned regularly. If the wipers do not wipe properly, substances on the vehicle's glass or the wiper blades may be the cause. These may include hot wax treatments used by commercial car washes, water repellent coatings, tree sap, or other organic contamination; these contaminants may cause squeaking or chatter noise from the blades, and streaking and smearing of the windshield. To clean these items, follow these tips:

- The windshield, rear windows and side windows may be cleaned with a non-abrasive cleaner such as Motorcraft Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23), available from your authorized dealer.
- The wiper blades can be cleaned with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol or Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (ZC-32-A), available from your authorized dealer. This washer fluid contains special solution in addition to alcohol which helps to remove the hot wax deposited on the wiper blade and windshield from automated car wash facilities. Be sure to replace wiper blades when they appear worn or do not function properly.
- Do not use abrasives, as they may cause scratches.
- Do not use fuel, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean any parts.

If you cannot remove those streaks after cleaning with the glass cleaner or if the wipers chatter and move in a jerky motion, clean the outer surface of the windshield and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild-abrasive cleaning solution. After cleaning, rinse the windshield and wiper blades with clean water. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse the windshield with water.

**Do not use sharp objects, such as a razor blade, to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals, as it may cause damage to the rear window defroster's heated grid lines.**

### INSTRUMENT PANEL/INTERIOR TRIM AND CLUSTER LENS

Clean the instrument panel, interior trim areas and cluster lens with a clean, damp, white cotton cloth, then use a clean and dry white cotton cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.

232



## Cleaning

- Be certain to wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion in order to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not use household or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.



**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

If a staining liquid like coffee/juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces, clean as follows:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, white, cotton cloth.
2. Wipe the surface with a damp, clean, white cotton cloth. For more thorough cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution. If the spot cannot be completely cleaned by this method, the area may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
3. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, white, cotton cloth and press the cloth onto the soiled area—allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.
4. Remove the soaked cloth, and if it is not soiled badly, use this cloth to clean the area by using a rubbing motion for 60 seconds.
5. Following this, wipe area dry with a clean, white, cotton cloth.

### INTERIOR

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats, safety belts and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54).
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (ZC-14). In Canada, use Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner (CXC-101).
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.

## Cleaning

- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's safety belts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side-airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a collision.

### LEATHER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

Your leather seating surfaces have a clear, protective coating over the leather.

- For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth. For more thorough cleaning, wipe the surface with a mild soap and water solution. In Canada, use Motorcraft Vinyl Cleaner (CXC-93). Dry the area with a soft cloth.
- If the leather cannot be completely cleaned using a mild soap and water solution, the leather may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product designed for automotive leather.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl and plastics, or oil/petroleum-based leather conditioners. These products may cause premature wearing of the clear, protective coating.

**Note:** In some instances, color or dye transfer can occur when wet clothing comes in contact with leather upholstery. If this occurs, the leather should be cleaned immediately to avoid permanent staining.

### UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

### **FORD AND LINCOLN MERCURY CAR CARE PRODUCTS**

Your Ford or Lincoln Mercury authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes. These quality products have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and appearance of your vehicle. Each product is made from high quality materials that meet or exceed rigid specifications. For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

- Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)
- Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)
- Motorcraft Custom Clear Coat Polish (ZC-8-A)
- Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A)
- Motorcraft Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)
- Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S. only) (ZC-20)
- Motorcraft Engine Shampoo (Canada only) (CXC-66-A)
- Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-101)
- Motorcraft Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)
- Motorcraft Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A)
- Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (U.S. only) (ZC-32-A)
- Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)
- Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (U.S. only) (ZC-14)
- Motorcraft Tire Clean and Shine (ZC-28)
- Motorcraft Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23)
- Motorcraft Vinyl Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-93)
- Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A)

## Maintenance and Specifications

### SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS

To help you service your vehicle, we provide *scheduled maintenance information* which makes tracking routine service easy.

If your vehicle requires professional service, your authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

### PRECAUTIONS WHEN SERVICING YOUR VEHICLE

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

### Working with the engine off

1. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).
2. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
3. Block the wheels to prevent the vehicle from moving unexpectedly.

### Working with the engine on

1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
2. Block the wheels.

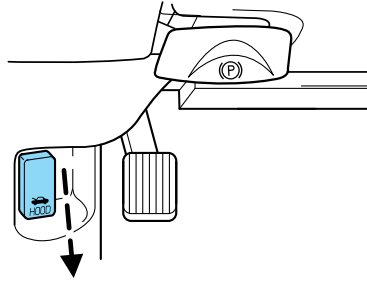


**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

## Maintenance and Specifications

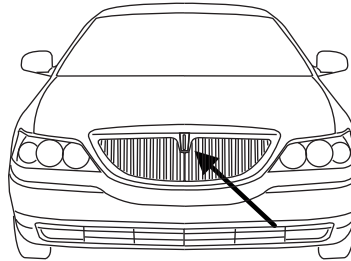
### OPENING THE HOOD

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the instrument panel.



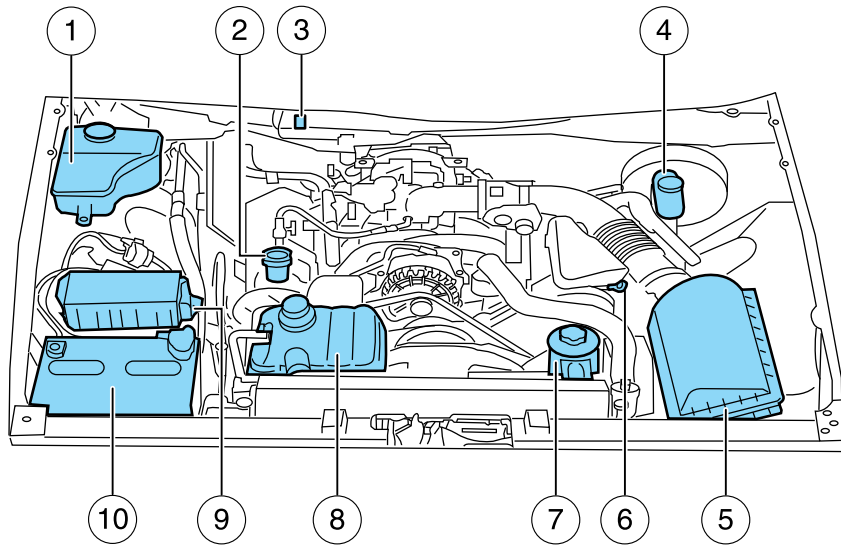
2. Go to the front of the vehicle and release the auxiliary latch that is located in the grille.

3. Lift the hood until the lift cylinders hold it open.



## Maintenance and Specifications

### IDENTIFYING COMPONENTS IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT



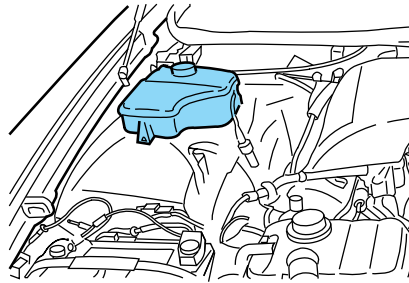
1. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Automatic transmission fluid dipstick
4. Brake fluid reservoir
5. Air filter assembly
6. Engine oil dipstick (access behind air tube)
7. Power steering fluid reservoir
8. Engine coolant reservoir
9. Power distribution box
10. Battery

## Maintenance and Specifications


### WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. In very cold weather, do not fill the reservoir completely.

Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. Do not use any special washer fluid such as windshield water repellent type fluid or bug wash. They may cause squeaking, chatter noise, streaking and smearing. Refer to the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter.



State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

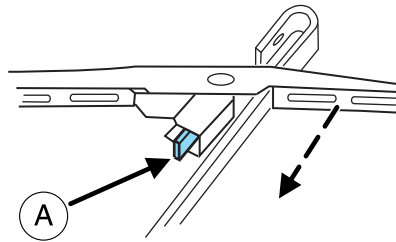
 **WARNING:** If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

**Note:** Do not put washer fluid in the engine coolant reservoir. Washer fluid placed in the cooling system may harm engine and cooling system components.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass. Turn the blade as much as possible to gain access to the lock tab (A). Using a skinny tool, press the lock tab (A) to release the blade from the arm loop and pull the blade from the arm.
2. Attach the new blade to the arm loop and pull it into place until a click is heard.



Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield. Refer to *Windows and wiper blades* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

To prolong the life of the wiper blades, it is highly recommended to scrape off the ice on the windshield before turning on the wipers. The layer of ice has many sharp edges and can damage the micro edge of the wiper rubber element.

### ENGINE OIL

#### Checking the engine oil

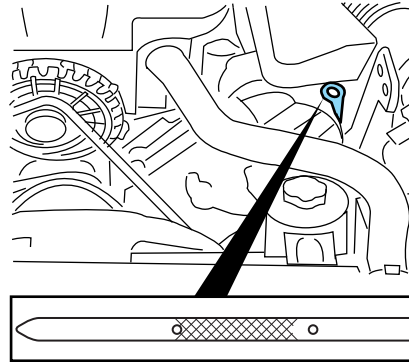
Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for checking the engine oil.

1. Make sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Turn the engine off and wait up to 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).
4. Open the hood. Protect yourself from engine heat.



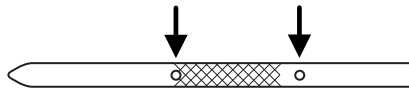
## Maintenance and Specifications

5. Locate and carefully remove the engine oil level dipstick.

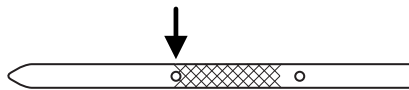


6. Wipe the dipstick clean. Insert the dipstick fully, then remove it again.

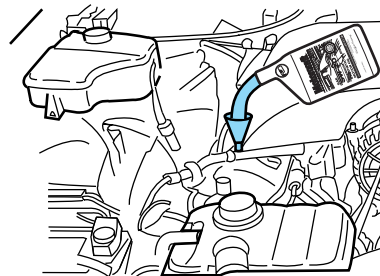
- If the oil level is **within this range**, the oil level is acceptable. **DO NOT ADD OIL.**



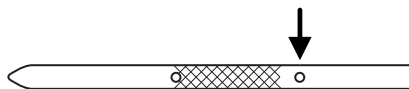
- If the oil level is **below this mark**, engine **oil must be added** to raise the level within the normal operating range.



- If required, add engine oil to the engine. Refer to *Adding engine oil* in this chapter.



- **Do not overfill the engine with oil. Oil levels above this mark may cause engine damage.** If the engine is



## Maintenance and Specifications

overfilled, some oil must be removed from the engine by an authorized dealer.

7. Put the dipstick back in and ensure it is fully seated.

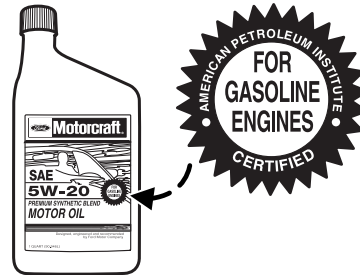
### Adding engine oil

1. Check the engine oil. For instructions, refer to *Checking the engine oil* in this chapter.
2. If the engine oil level is not within the normal operating range, add only certified engine oil of the recommended viscosity. Remove the engine oil filler cap and use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.
3. Recheck the engine oil level. Make sure the oil level is not above the normal operating range on the engine oil level dipstick.
4. Install the dipstick and ensure it is fully seated.
5. Fully install the engine oil filler cap by turning the filler cap clockwise until three clicks can be heard.

**To avoid possible oil loss, DO NOT operate the vehicle with the engine oil level dipstick and/or the engine oil filler cap removed.**

### Engine oil and filter recommendations

Look for this certification trademark.



### Use SAE 5W-20 engine oil

Only use oils “Certified For Gasoline Engines” by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

To protect your engine and engine’s warranty, use Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 or an equivalent SAE 5W-20 oil meeting Ford specification

242

## Maintenance and Specifications

WSS-M2C930-A. **SAE 5W-20 oil provides optimum fuel economy and durability performance meeting all requirements for your vehicle's engine.** Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* later in this chapter for more information.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives, cleaners or other engine treatments. They are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that is not covered by Ford warranty.

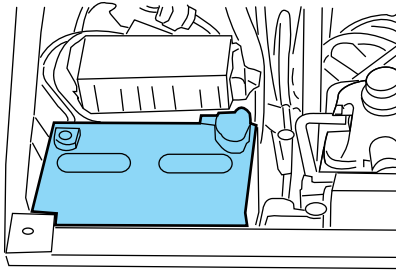
Change your engine oil and filter according to the appropriate schedule listed in the *scheduled maintenance information*.

Ford production and Motorcraft replacement oil filters are designed for added engine protection and long life. If a replacement oil filter is used that does not meet Ford material and design specifications, start-up engine noises or knock may be experienced.

It is recommended you use the appropriate Motorcraft oil filter or another with equivalent performance for your engine application.

### BATTERY

Your vehicle is equipped with a Motorcraft maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.



**If your battery has a cover/shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.**


For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.


If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.


It is recommended that the negative battery cable terminal be disconnected from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period of time. This will minimize the discharge of your battery during storage.


## Maintenance and Specifications

**Note: Electrical or electronic accessories or components added to the vehicle by the dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.**

 **WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.

 **WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

 **WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

 **WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash hands after handling.**

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically controlled by a computer, some control conditions are maintained by power from the battery. When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the engine must relearn its idle and fuel trim strategy for optimum driveability and performance. To begin this process:

1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
2. Put the gearshift in P (Park), turn off all accessories and start the engine.
3. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
4. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
5. Turn the A/C on and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

244

## Maintenance and Specifications

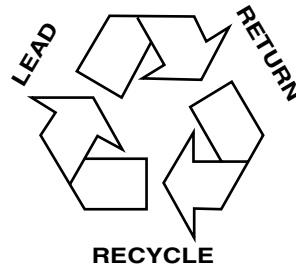
6. Release the parking brake. With your foot on the brake pedal and with the A/C on, put the vehicle in D (Drive) and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

7. Drive the vehicle to complete the relearning process.

- The vehicle may need to be driven 10 miles (16 km) or more to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.
- **If you do not allow the engine to relearn its idle trim, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the idle trim is eventually relearned.**

If the battery has been disconnected or a new battery has been installed, the clock and radio settings must be reset once the battery is reconnected.

- Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.



### ENGINE COOLANT

#### Checking engine coolant

The concentration and level of engine coolant should be checked at the intervals listed in *scheduled maintenance information*. The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50/50 coolant and distilled water, which equates to a freeze point of  $-34^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-36^{\circ}\text{C}$ ). Coolant concentration testing is possible with a hydrometer or antifreeze tester. The level of coolant should be maintained at the FULL COLD level or within the COLD FILL RANGE in the coolant reservoir. If the level falls below, add coolant per the instructions in the *Adding engine coolant* section.

Your vehicle was factory-filled with a 50/50 engine coolant and water concentration. If the concentration of coolant falls below 40% or above 60%, the engine parts could become damaged or not work properly. **A 50/50 mixture of coolant and water provides the following:**

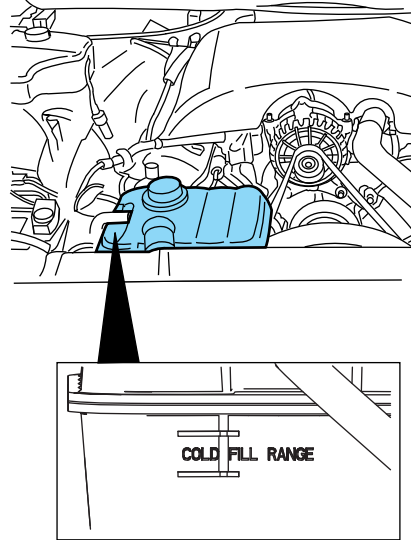
- **Freeze protection down to  $-34^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-36^{\circ}\text{C}$ ).**
- **Boiling protection up to  $265^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $129^{\circ}\text{C}$ ).**

245

## Maintenance and Specifications

- **Protection against rust and other forms of corrosion.**
- **Proper function of calibrated gauges.**

When the engine is cold, check the level of the engine coolant in the reservoir.



- The engine coolant should be at the FULL COLD level or within the COLD FILL RANGE as listed on the engine coolant reservoir (depending upon application).
- Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for service interval schedules.
- Be sure to read and understand *Precautions when servicing your vehicle* in this chapter.

If the engine coolant has not been checked at the recommended interval, the engine coolant reservoir may become low or empty. If the reservoir is low or empty, add engine coolant to the reservoir. Refer to *Adding engine coolant* in this chapter.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable; do not use engine coolant, antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

### Adding engine coolant

When adding coolant, make sure it is a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water. Add the mixture to the coolant reservoir, **when the engine is cool**, until the appropriate fill level is obtained.

246

## Maintenance and Specifications



**WARNING:** Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.



**WARNING:** Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

- **Do not mix coolants. Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.** Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets or cooling system sealants/additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling and/or heating systems. This damage would not be covered under your vehicle's warranty.

- A large amount of water without engine coolant may be added, in case of emergency, to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the cooling system must be drained and refilled with a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.
- **Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant).** Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- **Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant.** These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

For vehicles with overflow coolant systems with a non-pressurized cap on the coolant recovery system, add coolant to the coolant recovery reservoir when the engine is cool. Add the proper mixture of coolant and water to the FULL COLD level. For all other vehicles which have a coolant degas system with a pressurized cap, or if it is necessary to remove the coolant pressure relief cap on the radiator of a vehicle with an overflow system, follow these steps to add engine coolant.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Add the proper mixture of coolant and water to the cooling system by following these steps:

1. Before you begin, turn the engine off and let it cool.
2. When the engine is cool, wrap a thick cloth around the coolant pressure relief cap on the coolant reservoir (a translucent plastic bottle). Slowly turn cap counterclockwise (left) until pressure begins to release.
3. Step back while the pressure releases.
4. When you are sure that all the pressure has been released, use the cloth to turn it counterclockwise and remove the cap.
5. Fill the coolant reservoir slowly with the proper coolant mixture, to within the COLD FILL RANGE or the FULL COLD level on the reservoir. If you removed the radiator cap in an overflow system, fill the radiator until the coolant is visible and radiator is almost full.
6. Replace the cap. Turn until tightly installed. Cap must be tightly installed to prevent coolant loss.

After any coolant has been added, check the coolant concentration (refer to *Checking engine coolant*). If the concentration is not 50/50 (protection to  $-34^{\circ}\text{F}/-36^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), drain some coolant and adjust the concentration. It may take several drains and additions to obtain a 50/50 coolant concentration.

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough 50/50 concentration of engine coolant and distilled water to bring the liquid level to the proper level.

If you have to add more than 1.0 quart (1.0 liter) of engine coolant per month, have your authorized dealer check the engine cooling system. Your cooling system may have a leak. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

### Recycled engine coolant

Ford Motor Company does NOT recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.



Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.



## Maintenance and Specifications

### Coolant refill capacity

To find out how much fluid your vehicle's cooling system can hold, refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter. Fill your engine coolant reservoir as outlined in *Adding engine coolant* in this section.

### Severe climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates (less than  $-34^{\circ}\text{F}$  [ $-36^{\circ}\text{C}$ ]):

- **It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.**
- **NEVER increase the coolant concentration above 60%.**
- **Increased engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate freeze protection at the temperatures in which you drive in the winter months.**

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- **It is still necessary to maintain the coolant concentration above 40%.**
- **NEVER decrease the coolant concentration below 40%.**
- **Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the corrosion protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the freeze protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate protection at the temperatures in which you drive.**

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

### What you should know about fail-safe cooling



If the engine coolant supply is depleted, this feature allows the vehicle to be driven temporarily before incremental component damage is incurred. The "fail-safe" distance depends on ambient temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.

249

## Maintenance and Specifications

### **How fail-safe cooling works**

If the engine begins to overheat:

- The engine coolant temperature gauge will move to the H (hot) area.
- The  symbol will display in the message center.
- The message center will display COOLANT OVER TEMPERATURE.
- A chime will sound.
- The *service engine soon*  indicator light will illuminate.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine will automatically switch to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs the vehicle will still operate. However:

- The engine power will be limited.
- The air conditioning system will be disabled.

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and the engine will completely shut down, causing steering and braking effort to increase.

Once the engine temperature cools, the engine can be re-started. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

### **When fail-safe mode is activated**

You have limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, so drive the vehicle with caution. The vehicle will not be able to maintain high-speed operation and the engine will run rough. Remember that the engine is capable of completely shutting down automatically to prevent engine damage, therefore:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine.
2. Arrange for the vehicle to be taken to an authorized dealer.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level and replenish if low.



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

5. Re-start the engine and take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

**Driving the vehicle without repairing the engine problem increases the chance of engine damage. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible.**

250

## Maintenance and Specifications

### FUEL FILTER

For fuel filter replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the fuel filter.

**Replace the fuel filter with an authorized Motorcraft part. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel system if an authorized Motorcraft fuel filter is not used.**

### WHAT YOU SHOULD KNOW ABOUT AUTOMOTIVE FUELS

#### Important safety precautions



**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.



**WARNING:** If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



**WARNING:** Fuel ethanol and gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before fueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before fueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuels such as gasoline and ethanol are highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin and/or clothing, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline and/or ethanol vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.
- FFV fuel tanks may contain zero to 85 percent ethanol. Any fuel blends containing gasoline and ethanol should be treated the same as “Fuel Ethanol.” To identify if your vehicle is an FFV, it may be equipped with a yellow fuel cap with the text “E85/Gasoline”, or check if there is a label on the fuel filler door.



## Maintenance and Specifications

Pure ethanol is the alcohol which is the intoxicating agent in liquor, beer and wine. It is distilled from the fermentation of plants such as field corn and sugar cane. When ethanol is produced for use in motor fuels, a small amount of gasoline is added to make it unfit for beverage use. The resulting ethanol blend is called denatured fuel ethanol meaning that it is denatured with 2% to 5% gasoline and is suitable for automotive use.

During the summer season, fuel ethanol may contain a maximum of 85% denatured ethanol (Ed85) and 15% unleaded gasoline. The fuel ethanol has a higher octane rating than unleaded regular or premium gasoline and this allows the design of engines with greater efficiency and power.

Winter blends may contain up to 75% denatured ethanol (Ed75) and up to 25% unleaded gasoline to enhance cold engine starts. Severely cold weather may require additional measures for reliable starting. Refer to *Starting* in the *Driving* chapter.

Ethanol is more chemically active than gasoline. It corrodes some metals and causes some plastic and rubber components to swell, break down or become brittle and crack, especially when mixed with gasoline. Special materials and procedures have been developed for flexible fuel vehicles and the dispensers used by ethanol fuel providers.



**WARNING:** Flexible fuel components and standard unleaded gasoline fuel components are not interchangeable. If your vehicle is not serviced in accordance with flexible fuel vehicles procedures, damage may occur and your warranty may be invalidated.



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Care should be taken to avoid inhaling excess fumes.



**WARNING:** The flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity, which can cause a fire if fuel is pumped into an ungrounded fuel container.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Refueling



**WARNING:** Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others:

- Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island;
- Turn off your engine when you are refueling;
- Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle;
- Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel;
- Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle — this is against the law in some places;
- Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.


Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- DO NOT fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- DO NOT use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

### Fuel filler cap

When fueling your vehicle:



1. Turn the engine off.
2. Carefully turn the filler cap counterclockwise until it spins off.
3. Pull to remove the cap from the fuel filler pipe.
4. To install the cap, align the tabs on the cap with the notches on the filler pipe.
5. Turn the filler cap clockwise until it clicks at least once.



If the check fuel cap light  or a CHECK FUEL CAP message comes on, the fuel filler cap may not be properly installed. The light or message can come on after several driving events after you've refueled your vehicle.

At the next opportunity, safely pull off of the road, remove the fuel filler cap, align the cap properly and reinstall it. The check fuel cap

254

## Maintenance and Specifications

light  or CHECK FUEL CAP message may not reset immediately; it may take several driving cycles for the check fuel cap light  or CHECK FUEL CAP message to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after four or more hours with the engine off) followed by city and highway driving.

Continuing to drive with the check fuel cap light  or CHECK FUEL CAP message on may cause the  light to turn on as well.

**If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace it with a fuel filler cap that is designed for your vehicle. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford, Motorcraft or other certified fuel filler cap is not used.**



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.



**WARNING:** If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in personal injury.

### **FFV (Flex Fuel Vehicle) fuel cap**

If your vehicle is FFV capable, it will have a yellow colored fuel cap.

### **Choosing the right fuel**

If your vehicle is a flexible fuel vehicle (FFV), use only UNLEADED FUEL and FUEL ETHANOL (Ed75–Ed85).

If your vehicle is not a flexible fuel vehicle (FFV), then only use UNLEADED fuel or UNLEADED fuel blended with a maximum of 10% ethanol. Do not use fuel ethanol (E85), diesel, methanol, leaded fuel or any other fuel.

The use of leaded fuel is prohibited by law and could damage your vehicle.

Your vehicle was not designed to use fuel or fuel additives with metallic compounds, including manganese-based additives.

**Note:** Use of any fuel other than those recommended may cause powertrain damage, a loss of vehicle performance, and repairs may not be covered under warranty.

## Maintenance and Specifications

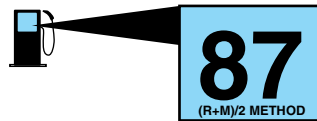
### Cleaner air

Ford endorses the use of reformulated “cleaner-burning” gasolines to improve air quality, per the recommendations in the *Choosing the right fuel* section.

### Octane recommendations

Your vehicle is designed to use “Regular” unleaded gasoline with a pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87. Some stations offer fuels posted as “Regular” with an octane rating below 87, particularly in high altitude areas. Fuels with octane levels below 87 are not recommended.

Do not be concerned if your engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily under most driving conditions while you are using fuel with the recommended



octane rating, see your authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

### FFV engine (if equipped)

If your vehicle is flex fuel capable, it is designed to use Fuel Ethanol (Ed75–Ed85), “Regular” unleaded gasoline or any mixture of the two fuels.

**Use of other fuels such as Fuel Methanol may cause powertrain damage, a loss of vehicle performance, and your warranty may be invalidated.**

It is best not to alternate repeatedly between gasoline and E85. If you do switch fuels, it is recommended that you add as much fuel as possible—at least half a tank. Do not add less than five gallons (18.9L) when refueling. You should drive the vehicle immediately after refueling for at least 5 miles (8 km) to allow the vehicle to adapt to the change in ethanol concentration.

If you operate your vehicle 50% or more of the time on ethanol, you should follow a different maintenance schedule. In addition to this, if you exclusively use E85 fuel, it is also recommended to fill the fuel tank with regular unleaded gasoline once every 3,000 miles (4,800 km). See *scheduled maintenance information* for more information.

### Fuel quality

Do not add aftermarket fuel additive products to your fuel tank. It should not be necessary to add any aftermarket products to your fuel tank if you continue to use high quality fuel of the recommended octane

256



## Maintenance and Specifications



rating. These products have not been approved for your engine and could cause damage to the fuel system. Repairs to correct the effects of using an aftermarket product in your fuel may not be covered by your warranty.

Many of the world's automakers approved the World-Wide Fuel Charter that recommends gasoline specifications to provide improved performance and emission control system protection for your vehicle. Gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter should be used when available. Ask your fuel supplier about gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter.

### Running out of fuel

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal.
- Normally, adding 1 gallon (3.8L) of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If the vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 1 gallon (3.8L) may be required.
- The service engine soon  indicator may come on. For more information on the service engine soon  indicator, refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

## ESSENTIALS OF GOOD FUEL ECONOMY

### Measuring techniques

Your best source of information about actual fuel economy is you, the driver. You must gather information as accurately and consistently as possible. Fuel expense, frequency of fill-ups or fuel gauge readings are NOT accurate as a measure of fuel economy. We do not recommend taking fuel economy measurements during the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of driving (engine break-in period). You will get a more accurate measurement after 2,000 miles–3,000 miles (3,000 km–5,000 km).

### Filling the tank

The advertised fuel capacity of the fuel tank on your vehicle is equal to the rated refill capacity of the fuel tank as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section of this chapter.

257

## Maintenance and Specifications

The advertised capacity is the amount of the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in a full tank and a tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the small amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.**

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the engine/ignition switch to the off position prior to refueling, an error in the reading will result if the engine is left running.
- Use the same filling rate setting (low — medium — high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic click-offs when filling.
- Always use fuel with the recommended octane rating.
- Use a known quality gasoline, preferably a national brand.
- Use the same side of the same pump and have the vehicle facing the same direction each time you fill up.
- Have the vehicle loading and distribution the same every time.

Your results will be most accurate if your filling method is consistent.

### Calculating fuel economy

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading (in miles or kilometers).
2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added (in gallons or liters).
3. After at least three to five tank fill-ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
5. Follow one of the simple calculations in order to determine fuel economy:

Calculation 1: **Divide total miles traveled by total gallons used.**

Calculation 2: **Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by total kilometers traveled.**

258

## Maintenance and Specifications

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This will provide an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter will show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures give lower fuel economy.

### Driving style — good driving and fuel economy habits

Give consideration to the lists that follow and you may be able to change a number of variables and improve your fuel economy.

#### **Habits**

- Smooth, moderate operation can yield up to 10% savings in fuel.
- Steady speeds without stopping will usually give the best fuel economy.
- Idling for long periods of time (greater than one minute) may waste fuel.
- Anticipate stopping; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Sudden or hard accelerations may reduce fuel economy.
- Slow down gradually.
- Driving at reasonable speeds (traveling at 55 mph [88 km/h] uses 15% less fuel than traveling at 65 mph [105 km/h]).
- Revving the engine before turning it off may reduce fuel economy.
- Using the air conditioner or defroster may reduce fuel economy.
- You may want to turn off the speed control in hilly terrain if unnecessary shifting between the top gears occurs. Unnecessary shifting of this type could result in reduced fuel economy.
- Warming up a vehicle on cold mornings is not required and may reduce fuel economy.
- Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving may reduce fuel economy.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.

#### **Maintenance**

- Keep tires properly inflated and use only recommended size.
- Operating a vehicle with the wheels out of alignment will reduce fuel economy.
- Use recommended engine oil. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

## Maintenance and Specifications

- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance items. Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and owner maintenance checks found in *scheduled maintenance information*.

### Conditions

- Heavily loading a vehicle or towing a trailer may reduce fuel economy at any speed.
- Carrying unnecessary weight may reduce fuel economy (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 km/L] is lost for every 400 lb [180 kg] of weight carried).
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle (for example bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski racks) may reduce fuel economy.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures during the first 8–10 miles (12–16 km) of driving.
- Driving on flat terrain offers improved fuel economy as compared to driving on hilly terrain.
- Transmissions give their best fuel economy when operated in the top cruise gear and with steady pressure on the gas pedal.
- Close windows for high speed driving.

### EPA fuel economy estimates

Every new vehicle should have a sticker on the window called the Monroney Label which contains EPA fuel economy estimates. Contact your authorized dealer if the Monroney Label is not supplied with your vehicle. The EPA fuel economy estimates should be your guide for the fuel economy comparisons with other vehicles. Your fuel economy may vary depending upon the method of operation and conditions.

### EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter which will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.

260

## Maintenance and Specifications


- Have the items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts are used for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

Illumination of the service engine soon  indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.



Please consult your *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* for complete emission warranty information.

### On board diagnostics (OBD-II)


Your vehicle is equipped with a computer that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system is commonly known as the On Board Diagnostics System (OBD-II). The OBD-II system protects the environment by ensuring that your vehicle continues to meet



261

## Maintenance and Specifications


government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists your authorized dealer in properly servicing your vehicle. When the service engine soon  indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon  indicator to illuminate. Examples are:


1. The vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
3. The fuel cap may not have been securely tightened. See *Fuel filler cap* in this chapter.
4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

These temporary malfunctions can be corrected by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly tightening the fuel cap or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon  indicator should stay off the next time the engine is started. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon  indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon  indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.

### Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing



Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon  indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is considered not ready for I/M testing.

If the service engine soon  indicator is on or the bulb does not work, the vehicle may need to be serviced. Refer to the On board diagnostics (OBD-II) description in this chapter.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may

262

## Maintenance and Specifications

indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon  indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon  indicator stays on solid, it means that the vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

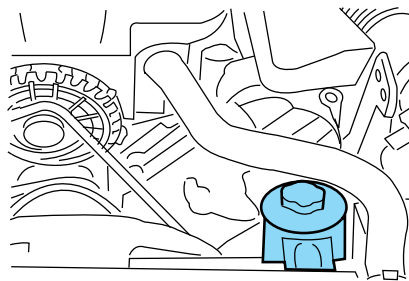
The OBD-II system is designed to check the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days. If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving may be performed:

15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway/highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.

Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete. If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, the above driving cycle will have to be repeated.

### POWER STEERING FLUID

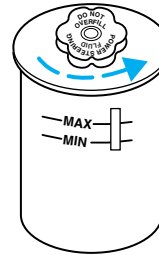
Check the power steering fluid.  
Refer to *scheduled maintenance information*.



1. Start the engine and let it run until it reaches normal operating temperature (the engine coolant temperature gauge indicator will be near the center of the normal area between H and C).
2. While the engine idles, turn the steering wheel left and right several times.
3. Turn the engine off.

## Maintenance and Specifications

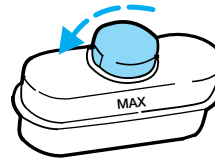
4. Check the fluid level in the reservoir. It should be between the MIN and MAX lines. Do not add fluid if the level is in this range.



5. If the fluid is low, add fluid in small amounts, continuously checking the level until it reaches the range between the MIN and MAX lines. Be sure to put the cap back on the reservoir. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter for the proper fluid type.

### **BRAKE FLUID**

The fluid level will drop slowly as the brakes wear, and will rise when the brake components are replaced. Fluid levels below the MAX line that do not trigger the brake system warning lamp are within the normal operating range, there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of your brake system could be compromised, seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.



### **TRANSMISSION FLUID**

#### **Checking automatic transmission fluid (if equipped)**

Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, i.e., if the transmission slips or shifts slowly or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

Automatic transmission fluid expands when warmed. To obtain an accurate fluid check, drive the vehicle until it is at normal operating temperature (approximately 20 miles [30 km]). If your vehicle has been operated for an extended period at high speeds, in city traffic during hot weather or pulling a trailer, the vehicle should be turned off for about 30 minutes to allow fluid to cool before checking.

264

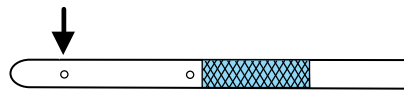


## Maintenance and Specifications

1. Drive the vehicle 20 miles (30 km) or until it reaches normal operating temperature.
2. Park the vehicle on a level surface and engage the parking brake.
3. With the parking brake engaged and your foot on the brake pedal, start the engine and move the gearshift lever through all of the gear ranges. Allow sufficient time for each gear to engage.
4. Latch the gearshift lever in P (Park) and leave the engine running.
5. Remove the dipstick, wiping it clean with a clean, dry lint free rag. If necessary, refer to *Identifying components in the engine compartment* in this chapter for the location of the dipstick.
6. Install the dipstick making sure it is fully seated in the filler tube.
7. Remove the dipstick and inspect the fluid level. The fluid should be in the designated area for normal operating temperature or ambient temperature.

### Low fluid level

Do not drive the vehicle if the fluid level is at the bottom of the dipstick and the ambient temperature is above 50°F (10°C).

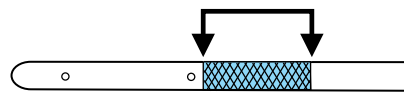


### Correct fluid level

The transmission fluid should be checked at normal operating temperature 150°F-170°F (66°C-77°C) on a level surface. The normal operating temperature can be reached after approximately 20 miles (30 km) of driving.

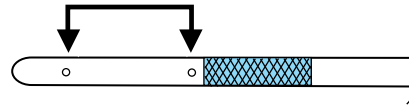
You can check the fluid without driving if the ambient temperature is above 50°F (10°C). However, if fluid is added at this time, an overfill condition could result when the vehicle reaches normal operating temperature.

The transmission fluid should be in this range if at normal operating temperature (150°F-170°F [66°C-77°C]).



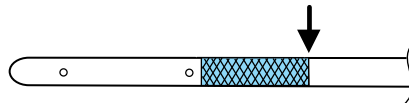
## Maintenance and Specifications

The transmission fluid should be in this range if at ambient temperature (50°F-95°F [10°C-35°C]).



### **High fluid level**

Fluid levels above the safe range may result in transmission failure. An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.



High fluid levels can be caused by an overheating condition.

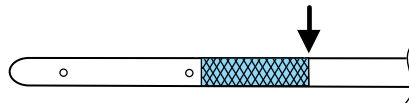
### **Adjusting automatic transmission fluid levels**

Before adding any fluid, make sure the correct type is used. The type of fluid used is normally indicated on the dipstick. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

**Use of a non-approved automatic transmission fluid may cause internal transmission component damage.**

If necessary, add fluid in 1/2 pint (250 ml) increments through the filler tube until the level is correct.

If an overfill occurs, excess fluid should be removed by an authorized dealer.



**An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.**

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### AIR FILTER

Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the air filter element.

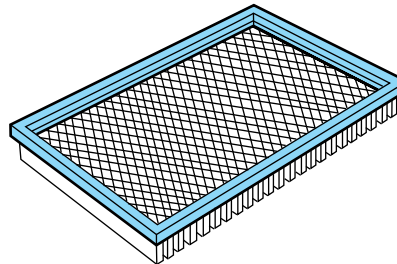
When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. Refer to *Motorcraft part numbers* in this chapter.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

### Changing the air filter element

1. Release the clamps that secure the air filter housing cover.
2. Carefully separate the two halves of the air filter housing.
3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
4. Wipe the air filter housing and cover clean to remove any dirt or debris and to ensure good sealing.
5. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.



6. Replace the air filter housing cover and secure the clamps.
7. Replace the air inlet tube and secure the clamp.

**Note:** Be sure the hinge features of the air filter cover to the air filter housing are fully engaged when reassembling the air filter assembly.

**Note:** Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### MOTORCRAFT PART NUMBERS

Component	4.6L V8 engine
Air filter element	FA-1032
Fuel filter	FG-986B
Battery-standard	BXT-65-650
Battery-heavy duty <sup>1</sup>	BXT-65-750
Oil filter	FL-820-S
Spark plugs	<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Included in long wheelbase package.

<sup>2</sup>For spark plug replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the spark plugs.

**Replace the spark plugs with ones that meet Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as Motorcraft or equivalent replacement parts. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if such spark plugs are not used.**

## Maintenance and Specifications

### MAINTENANCE PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS AND CAPACITIES

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Brake fluid	Between MIN and MAX on reservoir	Motorcraft High Performance DOT 3 Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid <sup>1</sup>	PM-1-C / WSS-M6C62-A or WSS-M6C65-A1
Door weatherstrips	—	Silicone Spray Lubricant	XL-6 / ESR-M13P4-A
Engine coolant	18.6 quarts (17.6L)	Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant with bittering agent (yellow colored) <sup>2</sup>	VC-7-B / WSS-M97B51-A1
Cooling system stop leak pellets	—	Motorcraft Cooling System Stop Leak Pellets	VC-6 / WSS-M99B37-B6
Hinges, latches, striker plates, fuel filler door hinge and seat tracks	—	Multi-Purpose Grease	XG-4 or XL-5 / ESB-M1C93-B
Lock cylinders	—	Motorcraft Penetrating and Lock Lubricant	XL-1 / None
Power steering fluid	Between MIN and MAX on reservoir	Motorcraft MERCON® V ATF	XT-5-QM / MERCON® V

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Engine oil	6.0 quarts (5.7L)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Motorcraft SAE 5W20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (US)</li> <li>• Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil (US)</li> <li>• Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada)</li> <li>• Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil (Canada) <sup>3</sup></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• XO-5W20-QSP (US)</li> <li>• XO-5W20-QFS (US)</li> <li>• CXO-5W20-LSP12 (Canada)</li> <li>• CXO-5W20-LFS12 (Canada)</li> </ul> /WSS-M2C930-A with API Certification Mark
Automatic transmission fluid (4R75E)	13.9 quarts (13.2L) <sup>4</sup>	Motorcraft MERCON® LV ATF <sup>5</sup>	XT-10-QLV / MERCON® LV
Rear axle fluid <sup>8</sup>	4.7-5.0 pints (2.3- 2.4L) <sup>7</sup> 4.5-4.7 pints (2.1-2.3L) <sup>6,7</sup>	Motorcraft SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant Motorcraft SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant (limousine)	XY-80W90-QL / WSP-M2C197-A  XY-75W140-QL / WSL-M2C192-A

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Windshield washer fluid	Fill to line on reservoir	Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate	ZC-32-A / WSB-M8B16-A2
Fuel tank	19.0 gallons (71.9L)	—	—

<sup>1</sup>Use only brake fluids certified to meet Ford specifications.

<sup>2</sup>Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.

<sup>3</sup>Use of synthetic or synthetic blend motor oil is not mandatory. Engine oil need only meet the requirements of Ford specification WSS-M2C930-A and the API Certification mark.

<sup>4</sup>Indicates only approximate dry-fill capacity. Some applications may vary based on cooler size and if equipped with an in-tank cooler. The amount of transmission fluid and fluid level should be set by the indication on the dipstick's normal operating range.

<sup>5</sup>Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause transmission damage. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* to determine the correct service interval.

<sup>6</sup>Add 4.0 oz. (118 ml) of Additive Friction Modifier XL-3 or equivalent meeting Ford specification EST-M2C118-A for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles only.

<sup>7</sup>Service refill capacities are determined by filling the rear axle 1/4 inch to 1/2 inch (6 mm to 13 mm) below the bottom of the filler hole.

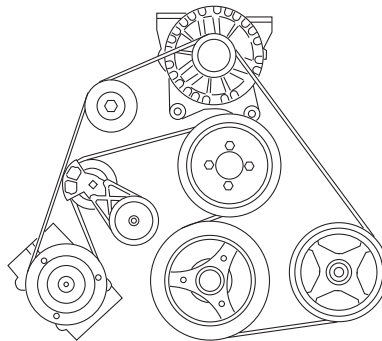
<sup>8</sup>Rear axles are considered lubricated for life when the vehicle is used for normal service. For severe duty requirements, see *Exceptions* and *Special Operating Conditions* in *scheduled maintenance information*.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### ENGINE DATA

Engine	4.6L V8 engine	4.6L FFV V8 engine
Cubic inches	281	281
Required fuel	87 octane	87 octane or ethanol (E-85)
Firing order	1-3-7-2-6-5-4-8	1-3-7-2-6-5-4-8
Ignition system	Coil on plug	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap	0.052–0.056 inch (1.32–1.42 mm)	0.041–0.047 inch (1.04–1.20 mm)
Compression ratio	9.4:1	9.4:1

### Engine drivebelt routing






## Maintenance and Specifications

### IDENTIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

#### Safety Compliance Certification Label

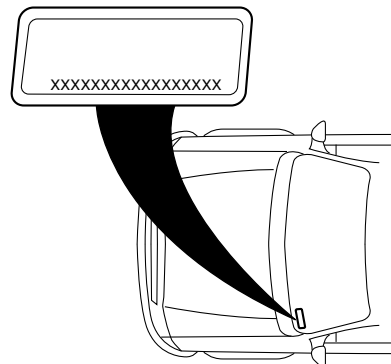
The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label is located on the structure (B-Pillar) by the trailing edge of the driver's door or the edge of the driver's door.

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.						
DATE: XX/XX	GVWR: XXXXXLB/ XXXXXKG					
FRONT GAWR: XXXXL	REAR GAWR: XXXXLB					
XXXXKG	WITH	XXXXKG	WITH			
XXXXXX/XXXXXX	TIRES	XXXXXX/XXXXXX	TIRES			
XXXX.XX	RIMS	XXXX.XX	RIMS			
AT XXX kPa/XX	PSI COLD	AT XXX kPa/XX	PSI COLD			
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.						
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXX					
TYPE: XXX	XXXXX					
						
EXT PNT: XX	RC: XX	DSO:				
WB <sup>1</sup> BRK <sup>1</sup>	INT TR <sup>1</sup>	TP/PS <sup>1</sup>	R <sup>1</sup>	AXLE <sup>1</sup>	TR SPR <sup>1</sup>	XXXXX
XXX X	XX	X	XX	X XX	XXX	
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXX XXXX-XXXXXXXX-XX						

#### Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is located on the driver side instrument panel.

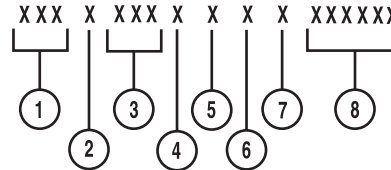
Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.



## Maintenance and Specifications

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) contains the following information:

1. World manufacturer identifier
2. Brake system / Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) / Restraint Devices and their location
3. Make, vehicle line, series, body type
4. Engine type
5. Check digit
6. Model year
7. Assembly plant
8. Production sequence number



### TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATIONS

You can find a transmission code on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table tells you which transmission each code represents.

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.			
DATE: XX/XX	GVWR: XXXXXLB/ XXXXXKG		
FRONT GAWR: XXXXL	REAR GAWR: XXXXLB		
XXXXKG	WITH XXXXKG	WITH	
XXXX/XXXXXX	TIRES: XXXX/XXXXXX	TIRES	
XXXX.XX	RIMS: XXXX.XX	RIMS	
AT XXX kPa/XX	PSI COLD	AT XXX kPa/XX	PSI COLD
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.			
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX		XXXXX	
TYPE: XXX		XXXXX	
EXT PNT: XX	RC: XX	DSC:	
WB <sup>1</sup> BRK <sup>1</sup> INT TR <sup>1</sup> TP/PS <sup>1</sup> R <sup>1</sup> AXLE <sup>1</sup>	TR <sup>1</sup> SPR <sup>1</sup>	XXXXX	
XXX X XX X XX X XX	X XX XXX		
XXXXXXXXXXXX XX XXXX-XXXXXX-XX			

Description	Code
Four-speed automatic (4R75E)	Q

## Accessories

### **GENUINE LINCOLN ACCESSORIES FOR YOUR VEHICLE**

A wide selection of Genuine Lincoln Accessories are available for your vehicle through your local Lincoln or Ford of Canada dealer. These quality accessories have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and aerodynamic appearance of your vehicle. In addition, each accessory is made from high quality materials and meets or exceeds Lincoln's rigorous engineering and safety specifications. Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly dealer-installed Genuine Lincoln Accessories found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories. The accessories will be warranted for whichever provides you the greatest benefit:

- 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km) (whichever occurs first), or
- the remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact your dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

Following is a list of several Genuine Lincoln Accessories. Not all accessories are available for all models. To find out what accessories are available for your vehicle, please contact your dealer or visit our online store at: [www.lincolnaccessories.com](http://www.lincolnaccessories.com).

#### **Exterior style**

Side deflectors

#### **Interior style**

Floor mats

#### **Lifestyle**

Cargo organization and management

## Accessories

### Peace of mind

Remote start

Vehicle security systems

Wheel locks

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Consult your authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems — such as two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms - that are equipped with radio transmitters. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with FCC or CRTC regulations and should be installed only by a qualified service technician.
- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if they are not properly designed for automotive use.
- To avoid interference with other vehicle functions, such as anti-lock braking systems, amateur radio users who install radios and antennas onto their vehicle should not locate the Amateur Radio Antennas in the area of the driver's side hood.
- Electrical or electronic accessories or components that are added to the vehicle by the authorized dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.

## Ford Extended Service Plan

### FORD ESP EXTENDED SERVICE PLANS

More than 30 million Ford, Lincoln, and Mercury owners have discovered the powerful protection of Ford ESP. It is the only extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides “peace of mind” protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage.

#### ***Up to 500+ Covered Vehicle Components***

There are four, new-vehicle Extended Service Plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your dealer for details.

**PremiumCare** – Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 500 covered components, this plan is so complete that we generally only discuss what’s not covered!

**ExtraCare** – Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.

**BaseCare** – Covers 84 components.

**PowertrainCare** – Covers 29 critical components.

**Ford ESP is honored by all Ford, Lincoln and Mercury Dealers in the U.S. and Canada** It’s the only extended service plan authorized and backed by Ford Motor Company. That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service anywhere you go.
- **Factory-trained technicians.**
- **Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Parts.**

#### ***Rental car reimbursement***

**If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs**, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including Bumper-to-Bumper warranty repairs, or manufacturer’s recalls.

#### ***Transferable coverage***

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford ESP coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Whenever you’re ready to sell your car, prospective buyers may feel better about taking a risk on your used vehicle. Ford ESP may add resale value!

Plus, **exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance**, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out-of-fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Destination assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and emergency transportation.

277

## Ford Extended Service Plan

### ***Ford ESP Can Quickly Pay for Itself***

One service bill – the cost of parts and labor – can easily exceed the price of your Ford ESP Service Contract. With Ford ESP, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

### ***Avoid the rising cost of properly maintaining your vehicle!***

Ford ESP also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers items that **routinely wear out**.

The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about affording your vehicle maintenance. It covers regular checkups, routine inspections, preventive care and replacement of items that require periodic attention for **normal “wear”**:

- **Wiper blades**
- **Spark plugs**  
(except California)
- **Clutch disc**
- **Brake pads and linings**
- **Shock absorbers**
- **Belts and hoses**

Contact your selling Ford, Lincoln, or Mercury dealership today so they can customize a Ford Extended Service Plan that fits your driving lifestyle and budget.

### ***Interest free finance options available***

Take advantage of our installment payment plan, just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable no interest, no-fee payment opportunity.

Ford Extended Service Plan

***Get Genuine Peace of Mind with Ford ESP!***

To learn more, complete the information below and mail this to:

**Ford ESP  
P.O. Box 8072  
Royal Oak, MI 48068-9933**

NAME (PLEASE PRINT) \_\_\_\_\_

ADDRESS \_\_\_\_\_ APT.NO. \_\_\_\_\_

CITY \_\_\_\_\_ STATE \_\_\_\_\_ ZIP \_\_\_\_\_

E-MAIL: \_\_\_\_\_

## Index

### A

- Accessory delay .....58
- Air cleaner filter .....267–268
- Air suspension .....188
  - description .....188
- Airbag supplemental restraint system .....116–117, 126
  - and child safety seats .....119
  - description .....117, 126
  - disposal .....129
  - driver airbag .....120, 127
  - indicator light .....126, 128
  - operation .....120, 127
  - passenger airbag .....120, 127
  - side airbag .....126
- Antifreeze
  - (see Engine coolant) .....245
- Anti-lock brake system
  - (see Brakes) .....184–185
- Anti-theft system .....89, 93
  - arming the system .....94
  - disarming a triggered system .....94
- Audio system (see Radio) ...26, 31
- Automatic transmission
  - driving an automatic overdrive .....190
  - fluid, adding .....264
  - fluid, checking .....264
  - fluid, refill capacities .....269
  - fluid, specification .....269
- Auxiliary power point .....55
- Axle
  - lubricant specifications .....269
  - refill capacities .....269
  - traction lok .....189

### B

- Battery .....243
  - acid, treating emergencies .....243
  - jumping a disabled battery ....215
  - maintenance-free .....243
  - replacement, specifications ...268
  - servicing .....243
- Belt-Minder® .....112
- Booster seats .....144
- Brakes .....184
  - anti-lock .....184–185
  - anti-lock brake system (ABS) warning light .....185
  - fluid, checking and adding ....264
  - fluid, specifications .....269
  - lubricant specifications .....269
  - shift interlock .....189
- Bulbs .....46

### C

- Capacities for refilling fluids ....269
- Car2U garage door opener .....68
- Cell phone use .....8
- Changing a tire .....206
- Child safety seats .....133
  - attaching with tether straps .....141
  - in front seat .....134
  - in rear seat .....134, 137
  - LATCH .....138
  - recommendations .....131
- Child safety seats - booster seats .....144
- Cleaning your vehicle
  - engine compartment .....231
  - instrument panel .....232
  - interior .....233



## Index

- plastic parts .....231
- washing .....229
- waxing .....230
- wheels .....230
- wiper blades .....232
- Climate control (see Air conditioning or Heating) .....38
- Clock .....55
- Compass, electronic
  - set zone adjustment .....22
- Console
  - rear .....56
- Controls
  - power seat .....98
  - steering column .....63
- Coolant
  - checking and adding .....245
  - refill capacities .....249, 269
  - specifications .....269
- Cruise control (see Speed control) .....60
- Customer Assistance .....197
  - Ford Extended Service Plan .....277
  - Getting assistance outside the U.S. and Canada .....226
  - Getting roadside assistance ...197
  - Getting the service you need .....222
  - Ordering additional owner's literature .....227
  - Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program .....226
- D**
  - Daytime running lamps (see Lamps) .....43
  - Defrost
    - rear window .....41
  - Dipstick
    - automatic transmission fluid .....264
    - engine oil .....240
  - Driving under special conditions .....192
    - through water .....196
- E**
  - Electronic message center .....18
  - Emergencies, roadside
    - jump-starting .....215
  - Emergency Flashers .....198
  - Emission control system .....260
  - Engine .....272
    - cleaning .....231
    - coolant .....245
    - fail-safe cooling .....249
    - idle speed control .....243
    - lubrication specifications .....269
    - refill capacities .....269
    - service points .....238–239
    - starting after a collision .....199
  - Engine block heater .....182
  - Engine oil .....240
    - change oil soon warning, message center .....240
    - checking and adding .....240
    - dipstick .....240

## Index

- filter, specifications .....242, 268
- recommendations .....242
- refill capacities .....269
- specifications .....269
- Event data recording .....7
- Exhaust fumes .....182
- F**
- Fail safe cooling .....249
- Flexible Fuel Vehicle (FFV) ....251
- Fluid capacities .....269
- Fuel .....251
  - calculating fuel
  - economy .....22, 257
  - cap .....254
  - capacity .....269
  - choosing the right fuel .....255
  - comparisons with EPA fuel
  - economy estimates .....260
  - detergent in fuel .....256
  - filling your vehicle with
    - fuel .....251, 254, 257
    - filter, specifications .....251, 268
    - fuel filler door override .....76
    - fuel filler door release .....76
    - fuel pump shut-off switch .....199
  - improving fuel economy .....257
  - octane rating .....256, 272
  - quality .....256
  - running out of fuel .....257
  - safety information relating to automotive fuels .....251
- Fuel - flex fuel vehicle (FFV) .....251, 255–256
- Fuses .....199–200
- G**
- Garage door opener .....64
- Gas cap (see Fuel cap) .....254
- Gas mileage (see Fuel economy) .....257
- Gauges .....16
- H**
- Hazard flashers .....198
- Head restraints .....95
- Headlamps .....42
  - aiming .....44
  - autolamp system .....42
  - bulb specifications .....47
  - daytime running lights .....43
  - flash to pass .....43
  - high beam .....43
  - replacing bulbs .....49
  - turning on and off .....42
- Homelink wireless control system .....65
- Hood .....237
- I**
- Ignition .....179, 272
- Illuminated visor mirror .....54
- Infant seats (see Safety seats) .....133
- Inspection/maintenance (I/M) testing .....262
- Instrument panel
  - cleaning .....232
  - cluster .....12
  - lighting up panel and interior .....44

282

## Index

### J

- Jack .....206
  - positioning .....206
  - storage .....206
- Jump-starting your vehicle .....215

### K

- Keyless entry system
  - keypad .....87
  - locking and unlocking doors ....88
  - programming entry code .....87
- Keys .....77, 92
  - positions of the ignition .....179

### L

- Lamps
  - autolamp system .....42
  - bulb replacement
  - specifications chart .....47
  - daytime running light .....43
  - headlamps .....42
  - headlamps, flash to pass .....43
  - instrument panel, dimming ....44
  - interior lamps .....46, 48
  - replacing bulbs .....49
- LATCH anchors .....138
- Lights, warning and indicator ....12
  - anti-lock brakes (ABS) .....185
- Load limits .....168
- Locks
  - childproof .....79
  - doors .....77
- Lubricant specifications .....269
- Lug nuts .....214
- Lumbar support, seats .....98

### M

- Message center .....18–19
  - english/metric button .....22–23
  - system check button .....22
  - warning messages .....23
- Mirrors .....58
  - automatic dimming rearview
  - mirror .....58
  - fold away .....60
  - heated .....59
  - programmable memory .....84
  - side view mirrors (power) .....58
- Motorcraft parts .....235, 251, 268

### O

- Octane rating .....256
- Oil (see Engine oil) .....240

### P

- Parking brake .....185
- Parts (see Motorcraft parts) ....268
- Passenger Occupant Classification Sensor .....104
- Pedals (see Power adjustable foot pedals) .....60
- Power adjustable foot pedals ....60
- Power distribution box (see Fuses) .....203
- Power door locks .....77
- Power mirrors .....58
- Power point .....55
- Power steering .....187
  - fluid, checking and adding ....263
  - fluid, refill capacity .....269

283

## Index

- Power trunk .....74, 76  
Power Windows .....57
- R**
- Radio .....26, 31  
Rear window defroster .....41  
Recommendations for  
attaching safety restraints for  
children .....131  
Relays .....199  
Remote entry system .....81  
    illuminated entry .....86  
    locking/unlocking doors .....82  
    opening the trunk .....83  
    panic alarm .....83  
    replacement/additional  
    transmitters .....85  
    replacing the batteries .....84  
Reverse sensing system .....193  
Roadside assistance .....197
- S**
- Safety belts  
(see Safety restraints) ....103, 106,  
108–111  
Safety Canopy .....126  
Safety defects, reporting .....228  
Safety restraints .....103, 106,  
108–111  
    Belt-Minder® .....112  
    extension assembly .....111  
    for adults .....108–111  
    for children .....129  
    lap belt .....108  
    Occupant Classification  
    Sensor .....104  
    warning light and chime .....112
- 284
- Safety restraints - LATCH  
anchors .....138  
Safety seats for children .....133  
Safety Compliance  
Certification Label .....273  
Seats .....95  
    child safety seats .....133  
    easy access/easyout  
    feature .....102  
    heated .....100  
    memory seat .....84, 102  
SecuriCode keyless entry  
system .....87  
SecuriLock passive anti-theft  
system .....89  
Servicing your vehicle .....236  
Spark plugs,  
specifications .....268, 272  
Specification chart,  
lubricants .....269  
Speed control .....60  
Starting a flex fuel vehicle .....181  
Starting your vehicle .....179–181  
    jump starting .....215  
Steering wheel  
    controls .....63  
    tilting .....54
- T**
- Tilt steering wheel .....54  
Tire Pressure Monitoring  
System (TPMS)  
    Tires, Wheels and Loading ....163  
Tires .....148–149, 206  
    alignment .....156  
    care .....152

## Index

- changing .....206, 209
- checking the pressure .....152
- inflating .....150
- label .....162
- replacing .....154
- rotating .....157
- safety practices .....156
- sidewall information .....158
- snow tires and chains .....168
- spare tire .....207, 209
- terminology .....149
- tire grades .....149
- treadwear .....148, 153
- Towing .....175
  - recreational towing .....178
  - trailer towing .....175
  - wrecker .....220
- Traction control .....186
- Traction-lok rear axle .....189
- Transmission .....190
  - brake-shift interlock (BSI) ....189
  - fluid, checking and adding
    - (automatic) .....264
    - fluid, refill capacities .....269
- lubricant specifications .....269
- Trunk .....80
  - remote release .....75, 83
- Turn signal .....46
- U**
- Universal garage door opener ....64
- V**
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) .....273
- Vehicle loading .....168
- Ventilating your vehicle .....182
- W**
- Warning lights (see Lights) .....12
- Water, Driving through .....196
- Windows
  - power .....57
- Windshield washer fluid and wipers .....53
  - replacing wiper blades .....240
- Wrecker towing .....220

## Free Manuals Download Website

<http://myh66.com>

<http://usermanuals.us>

<http://www.somanuals.com>

<http://www.4manuals.cc>

<http://www.manual-lib.com>

<http://www.404manual.com>

<http://www.luxmanual.com>

<http://aubethermostatmanual.com>

Golf course search by state

<http://golfingnear.com>

Email search by domain

<http://emailbydomain.com>

Auto manuals search

<http://auto.somanuals.com>

TV manuals search

<http://tv.somanuals.com>